

Forgotten Books

— www.forgottenbooks.com —

Copyright © 2016 FB &c Ltd.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, distributed, or transmitted in any form or by any means, including photocopying, recording, or other electronic or mechanical methods, without the prior written permission of the publisher, except in the case of brief quotations embodied in critical reviews and certain other noncommercial uses permitted by copyright law.

Technical and Bibliographic Notes / Notes technique

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming are checked below.

- Coloured covers /
Couverture de couleur
- Covers damaged /
Couverture endommagée
- Covers restored and/or laminated /
Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée
- Cover title missing / Le titre de couverture manque
- Coloured maps / Cartes géographiques en couleur
- Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black) /
Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)
- Coloured plates and/or illustrations /
Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur
- Bound with other material /
Relié avec d'autres documents
- Only edition available /
Seule édition disponible
- Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion
along interior margin / La reliure serrée peut
causer de l'ombre ou de la distorsion le long de
la marge intérieure.
- Blank leaves added during restorations may appear
within the text. Whenever possible, these have
been omitted from filming / Il se peut que certaines
pages blanches ajoutées lors d'une restauration
apparaissent dans le texte, mais, lorsque cela était
possible, ces pages n'ont pas été filmées.
- Additional comments /
Commentaires supplémentaires:

L'Institut a microfilmé la meilleure copie originale disponible pour la microfilmage. Les caractéristiques de cette copie qui peuvent être bibliographiquement uniques, qui peuvent modifier les images de la reproduction, ou qui peuvent changer de manière significative la méthode habituelle de microfilmage sont indiquées ci-dessous.

- Coloured pages / Pages de couleur
- Pages damaged / Pages endommagées
- Pages restored and/or laminated / Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées
- Pages discoloured and/or foxed / Pages décolorées et/ou jaunies
- Pages detached / Pages détachées
- Showthrough / Transparence
- Quality of print varies / Qualité de l'impression varie
- Includes supplementary material / Comprend du matériel supplémentaire
- Pages wholly blank (i.e. endpapers, flyleaves, etc.) / Pages entièrement blanches (i.e. pages de garde, etc.)
- Opposing pages with bleed-through (i.e. double-sided pages) / Pages opposées avec transparence (i.e. pages à double face)

thanks

L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la
générosité de:

Bibliothèque nationale du Canada

ity
ility

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le
plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et
de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en
conformité avec les conditions du contrat de
filimage.

ilmed
on
pres-
li
n the
a-
nted

Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en
papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant
par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la
dernière page qui comporte une empreinte
d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second
plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires
originaux sont filmés en commençant par la
première page qui comporte une empreinte
d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par
la dernière page qui comporte une telle
empreinte.

N-
").

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la
dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le
cas: le symbole \blacktriangleright signifie "A SUIVRE", le
symbole \blacktriangledown signifie "FIN".

be

to

ne

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être
filmés à des taux de réduction différents.
Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être
reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir
de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite,
et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre
d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants
illustrent la méthode.

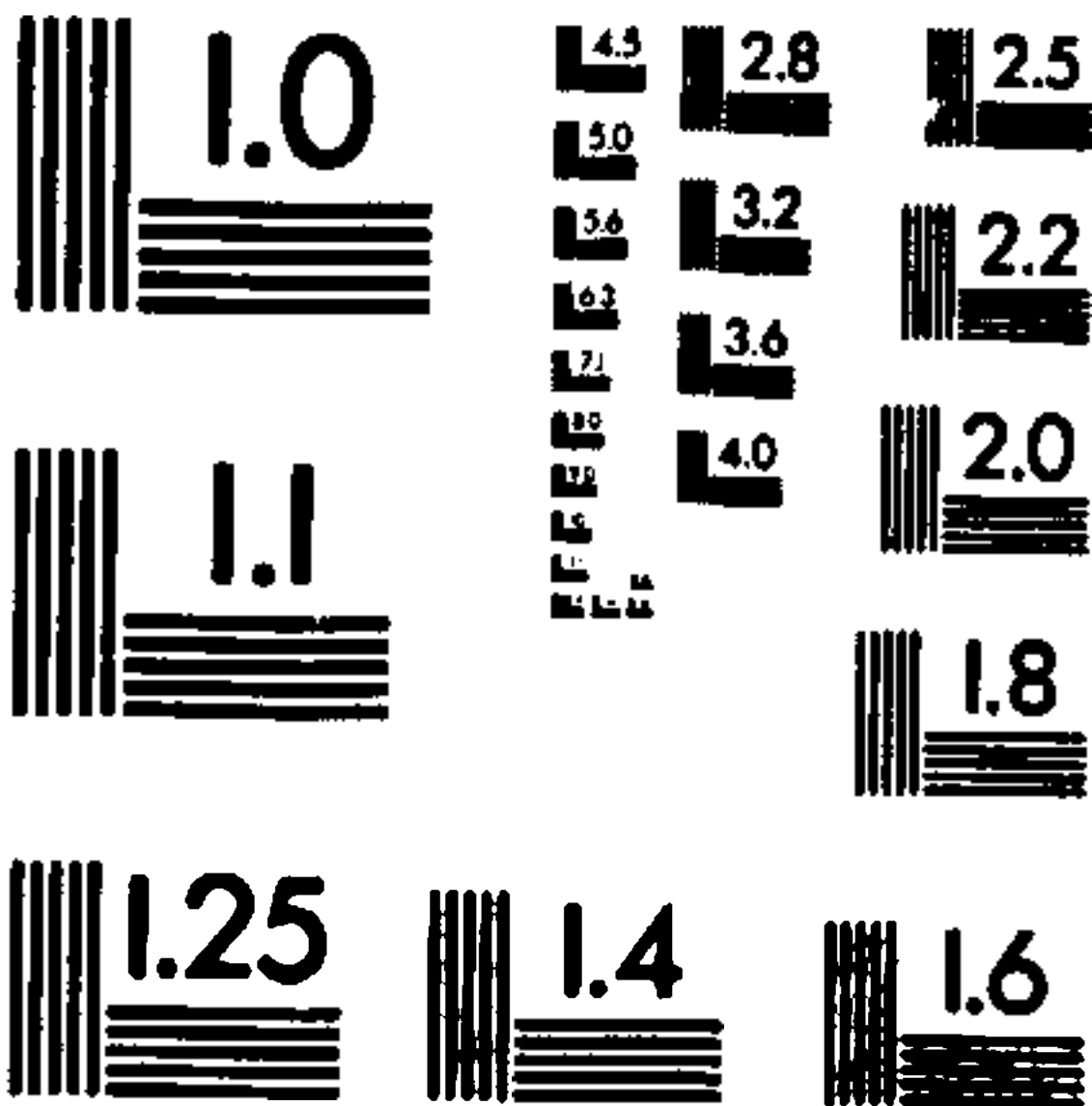
3

1

2

MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



APPLIED IMAGE Inc

1653 East Main Street
Rochester, New York 14609 USA
(716) 482 - 0300 - Phone
(716) 288 - 5989 - Fax

MATRICULATION CAESAR

BELL GALE, B. P. CHAPTERS 20-38

BELL GALE, B. P. CHAPTERS 1-19

ANDERSON

Gladys Frank

24
B

Gladys Frank

Gladys Frank
Grade XI

MATRICULATION CAESAR

BELL GALL., B. IV, CHAPTERS 20-38

AND

BELL GALL., B. V, CHAPTERS 1-23

BY

JOHN HENDERSON, M.A.

AND

R. A. LITTLE, B.A.

TORONTO

THE COPP, CLARK COMPANY, LIMITED

A4

143

1909

Copyright, Canada, 1909, by the Corp. CLARK COMPANY, LIMITED, Toronto, Ontario.

09412132

Blodys Frank.
Grade XI.

CONTENTS

I.—PRESCRIBED CAESAR		PAGES
INTRODUCTION.—I. The Life of Caius Julius Caesar.....		1-3
II. Conquest of G.....		4-9
III. Life of Caesar after the Conquest of Gaul..		9-12
IV. Character of Caesar.....		12
V. Works of Caesar.....		13
VI. The Roman Army.....		14, 15
VII. Officers of the Army.....		15
VIII. Arms.....		16, 17
IX. Standards.....		17
X. The Musical Instruments.....		18
XI. Army on the March.....		13
XII. Army in Camp.....		17
Text of Caesar.....		20-57
Sentence-Structure.....		58-60
Notes on Caesar.....		61-100
Exercises in Latin Prose.....		101-131

II.—SIGHT TRANSLATION. 132-170

III.—VOCABULARY 171-220

ILLUSTRATIONS

	PAGES
Map of Gaul	
Caius Julius Caesar, from a bust in the Louvrefacing	1
Arms	16
Standards	17
Plan of a Consular Camp	19

TO

REV. WILLIAM ROBERTSON, A.M.

"justissimus unus
qui fuit et servantissimus aequi."



CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR

John Martin

|

4 Long West 2 0 Longitude 2 East from 4 Greenwich 0 8 10

Map No. 1.

GAUL

IN THE TIME OF CESAR.

SCALE OF STADIUMS.





THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of
human knowledge in
797,885 volumes

Instant access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

*Related to
Marius*

His aunt Julia was married to Caius Marius, who saved Italy in the war against the Cimbri and Teutones, and was the sturdy supporter of the popular party against the narrow senatorial faction led by Cornelius Sulla. Though aristocratic by birth, Caesar was no doubt led through the influence of Marius to side with the popular party.

*Flamen
Dialis*

At the age of 14, Caesar was appointed priest of Jupiter (*Flamen Dialis*), and by virtue of this office he became a member of the sacred college and received a handsome income. In 83 B.C., at the age of 17, he married Cornelia, daughter of L. Cornelius Cinna, the leader of the popular party and the avowed opponent of Sulla. Soon afterwards Sulla returned from Asia and proscribed Marius and all his adherents. As the nephew of Marius and the husband of Cornelia, Caesar was especially an object of displeasure. He was ordered to divorce Cornelia, but refused to obey. Accordingly a price was set upon his life, and it was only through the earnest intercession of his friends that he was pardoned.

*Marries
Cornelia*

*Serves his
first cam-
paign
80-78 B.C.*

In consequence of having thwarted the will of the imperious Sulla, Caesar found it unsafe to remain at Rome. He went to Asia, where he served with distinction at the siege of Mitylene and in the war against the Cilician pirates. On the report of Sulla's death, 78 B.C., he returned to Rome to resume his studies.

*Goes to
Rhodes
76-75 B.C.*

Oratory and military skill were in Rome the two great avenues to success. To improve his skill in oratory, Caesar went to Rhodes, 76 B.C., to study rhetoric and oratory under Apollonius Molon, the most celebrated teacher of that time. On the way thither Caesar's vessel was captured by pirates and Caesar was detained till a heavy ransom was paid. During his detention he is said to have joined these marauders in their sports and to have told them half-jestingly that he would, when liberated, have them hanged. This threat he made good. Landing at Miletus, he collected a small fleet, captured them and brought them to Pergamus, where they were executed. He stayed at the school of Molon for two years.

*Quaestor
68 B.C.*

Caesar began his political career in 68 B.C., by gaining the *quaestorship*, and by virtue of this office he was connected with the public treasury and entitled to a seat in the senate.

In 65 B.C., he was elected to the office of *curule aedile*, which had charge of public buildings and the oversight of public festivals and games. While holding this office he increased his popularity and also his debts by the costly gladiatorial shows which he gave. He also more than ever identified himself with the popular party by his devotion to the memory of Marius. He caused the trophies of that great commander, which had been destroyed by Sulla, to be replaced.

In 63 B.C., a year memorable for the conspiracy of Catiline, Caesar was elected *pontifex maximus* against the strong opposition of the *optimates*. This office, though not a civil office, conferred great power and dignity on Caesar. In 62 B.C., he was elected *praetor*, an office chiefly of a judicial nature. On resigning this office, he went to Spain, as *pro-praetor*, when he managed to gain money enough to pay off his enormous debts.

On his return from Spain, he united with Pompey and Crassus to form the *First Triumvirate*. Pompey may be said to have been the representative of the aristocratic class; Caesar, of the democratic; while Crassus represented the monied interests.

In 59 B.C., Caesar became consul. To further cement the union, Pompey married Julia, Caesar's daughter. During this year, Caesar passed an Agrarian law for the division of lands among the poor of Italy. The object of the bill was to restore to the peasant freeholders lands of which they had been dispossessed by the rich. He also caused to be passed a body of laws called *Leges Juliae*, the object of which was to guard the rights of individuals, to secure justice in the courts, to improve public and private morality, and to obtain generally good government for the state. Before laying down his consulship, he procured the passage of a bill by which he was invested for five years with pro-consular powers over the two Gauls and over Illyricum.

II

The Conquest of Gaul

The Gauls

The Gauls were a Celtic race, of the same stock as the Welsh, the Erse or Celts of Ireland, and the Highlanders of Scotland. When the Romans became acquainted with them, they were in a primitive state of civilization. They are described as a tall, blue-eyed, fair-haired race, nomadic in their habits, pasturing their flocks and herds, and paying little heed to agriculture. They dwelt in open villages or collections of primitive huts without fortifications. The clan system prevailed amongst them; at the head of each clan was the chief, and they never got beyond this form of government. According to Mommsen, they had slaken all states but founded none. Though individually a match for the Romans in physical strength and personal courage, they had not the qualities to endure a campaign or to make any permanent use of their conquests. According to Cato, the Elder, they cared for little else than for wit and war. The influence of the chief depended on his fame as a warrior or his skill as an orator. They lived by plundering each other or their common enemies. They excelled, however, in horsemanship, and were active warriors, but were better fitted for aggressive than for defensive war.

**Danger
from the
Gauls**

The Romans had been defeated at the Alia in 300 B.C., and the city had been plundered and burned by this race. Again, in the days of Marius, it was saved only by the skill of that general at Vercellae, 101 B.C.

Rome had succeeded in gaining dominion over all the surrounding nations with one exception. She had successively got into her power Sicily, Sardinia, Spain, Africa, Greece, Asia Minor, Syria, Egypt. The only nation around the Mediterranean not under her power was Gaul.

**Caesar's
Provinces**

Gallia Cisalpina, Gallia Transalpina and Illyricum were the three provinces given to Caesar by the Senate. Gallia Cisalpina comprised that part of Italy north of the Rubicon and the *Maera*. Illyricum included a part of Croatia, the whole of *Dalmatia*, *Bosnia*, and part of *Albania*; Gallia Transalpina included the whole of *France*, *Belgium*, and

**Roman
Provinces**

parts of *Holland, Switzerland and Germany*. In the southern part was the *Provincia* around the southern part of the Rhone. This was acquired by the Romans in 121 B.C., and *Narbo Martius* (now *Narbonne*) was made the capital of the *Provincia*, a word which still survives in the word *Provence*. The rest of *Gallia Transalpina* was divided into three parts. *Aquitania* included the country between the *Pyrenees and the Garonne*; *Gallia Celtica* the land between the *Garonne and the Seine*; all between the *Seine and Marne* on the south and the *Rhine* on the north was called *Gallia Belgica*. The *Aquitani* were akin to the *Basques*; the rest of Gaul outside the *Provincia* was inhabited by people of Celtic origin, comprising about sixty tribes, which were always at war with each other or their common enemies.

Divisions of Gaul

Just before the days of Caesar two factions existed in the country, one headed by the *Haedui*, who were in league with the Romans, and the other headed by the *Arverni* and the *Sequani*. The *Haedui*, proud of the alliance with Rome, had been lording it over the others, and as a counterbalance for the support of the Romans the *Arverni* and the *Sequani* had invited the aid of the neighboring Germans.

Parties in Gaul

The immediate cause of Caesar's departure was the news that reached Rome that the *Helvetii* were setting out from *Switzerland* on an expedition into Gaul, just as the *Cimbri* had done about fifty years before. They had left their homes, burned their towns and villages, passed through the territories of the *Sequani* and were plundering those of the *Haedui*. Their presence was a standing menace to the Roman *Provincia*. Caesar left Rome with five legions and by rapid marches soon overtook the enemy and defeated them at *Bibracte* (now *Autun*).

Cause of Caesar's departure

First Campaign 58 B.C. B. I.

Defeat of the Helvetii

Not content with protecting the Province against its invaders, Caesar now accepted the invitation of the *Haedui* to drive out of Gaul the Germans under *Ariovistus*. This leader made overtures to Caesar to divide Gaul between them, but the proposal was rejected by Caesar. *Ariovistus* was defeated near the modern town of *Basle*, and the Romans by their victory extended their territory as far as the *Treviri*.

Defeat of Ariovistus

INTRODUCTION

**Second
Campaign
57 B.C.
B. II.**

The second year in Gaul was occupied with a war against the Belgae. Alarmed at the encroachments of the Romans, the tribes between the Seine and the Rhine had formed a league against Caesar. Only the Remi were favorable to him. After reducing the weaker tribes, Caesar marched against the Nervii, one of the most warlike of the Gallic tribes, and fought a desperate battle, which was won only by his skill and personal daring. So signal was this victory that a public thanksgiving of fifteen days, an unprecedented honor, was granted to Caesar. By this victory all Eastern Gaul, from the Mediterranean to the English Channel, was now in the hands of the Romans.

**Defeat of
the Nervii**

**Third
Campaign
56 B.C.
B. III.**

During the spring of the third year in Gaul, Caesar saw clearly that his work there could not be completed at the expiration of the five years, which would end in December, 54 B.C. He did not wish to run the risk of having his policy reversed by the Senate as Pompey's had been in the war against Mithridates, nor did he desire to leave his veterans unprovided for, or to have the laws passed in his consulship ignored or repealed. There were now signs of the coming struggle. Cicero had already assailed the acts of the triumvirs and dissensions were arising between Pompey and Crassus. The influence of Pompey and the optimates was gradually being eclipsed by the brilliant successes of Caesar in Gaul. At Luca, Caesar held a conference with Pompey and Crassus, at which it was agreed that Pompey and Crassus should be consuls for the year 55 B.C., that Pompey should receive the command of the two Spains (*Hispania citerior et ulterior*) for five years at the end of 53 B.C., and Crassus the government of Syria for the same period, and that Caesar should remain in Gaul till December 31, 49 B.C., and that he should stand for the consulship of the following year 48 B.C. Caesar would thus lay down his consulship a year before Crassus or Pompey.

**Conference
at Luca**

**Conquest of
the Veneti**

In the third campaign Caesar completed the conquest of Gaul. He defeated the Veneti, a daring, sea-faring people of north-western Gaul. He then turned his army against the Morini and Menapii, two tribes in the neighborhood of *Calais*. Though the Gauls had been defeated, still the

spirit of the nation was not broken, and only lacked an opportunity to rise against the conquerors.

The news on the German frontier called out Caesar earlier than usual during the spring of this year. The Usipetes and Tencteri, two German tribes, had been driven out of their territories by the Suevi, and had crossed the Rhine with the intention of settling in Eastern Gaul. Caesar defeated them with great slaughter after detaining the ambassadors who had come to sue for peace. After this victory, Caesar decided to cross the Rhine to strike terror into the hearts of the inhabitants. In ten days he built a bridge in the neighborhood of Cologne, and, crossing the river, remained about eighteen days on the eastern side. He then crossed back, broke down the bridge, and returned to Gaul. He then resolved to cross the channel and invade Britain. With two legions (the seventh and the tenth), and eighty ships he set out from Port Itius (probably Boulogne), and landed, probably, at Deal. Beyond securing the submission of a few British tribes in the southern part of the Island, the invasion effected nothing, for the season was too far advanced to permit a regular campaign. A public thanksgiving of twenty days was decreed, not without opposition, for Cato proposed that Caesar should be given up to the Germans in consequence of his treacherous acts towards the ambassadors of the Usipetes and the Tencteri.

The expedition against Britain had flattered the vanity of the Romans. The island was said to abound with rich mines, and the sea with pearls. Here, therefore, was a rich field for Roman enterprise. Accordingly he wished to complete the conquest he had begun in the previous summer. Again he started from Port Itius with five legions and landed at the same place as in the previous year. The Britons had put in supreme command Cassivellaunus, chief of the Trinobantes, whose state lay north of the Thames. Caesar advanced north, crossed the Thames, probably above London, defeated the Britons, and advanced as far as St. Albans. After taking hostages and determining the amount of tribute Britain should pay yearly, Caesar returned to the Continent. Caesar's absence from Gaul had been attended with danger to the Roman cause, for a rebellion was maturing in Gaul. This

*Uprising in
Gaul*

Caesar helped to foster by arranging his legions at considerable distances from each other—a policy he was compelled to pursue in consequence of the scarcity of corn in Gaul. Accordingly the Eburones, a Gallic tribe, attacked the camp of Sabinus and Cotta and cut to pieces their command. They next besieged Quintus Cicero, the brother of the orator, who was stationed among the Nervii. Cicero was relieved by the timely aid of Caesar.

*Sixth
Campaign
55 B.C.
B. VI.*

The defeat of Sabinus and Cotta had inspired the nation of Gaul to make an effort to regain its independence. Caesar strengthened his army by levying two new legions in Cisalpine Gaul and receiving another from Pompey, who was now at Rome. He defeated in turn several tribes in North-Eastern Gaul. As the chief of these tribes, the Treviri, had been aided by the Germans, Caesar determined to cross the Rhine again. After receiving the submission of the Ubii, he devastated the lands of the Menapii, and, on his return to Gaul, he laid waste the lands of the Eburones.

*A second
time across
the Rhine*

*Seventh
Campaign
54 B.C.
B. VII.*

This year was marked by a general uprising of Gaul. Even the Haedui, the former friends of the Romans, joined in the general revolt. At the head of the insurgents was Vercingetorix, the chief of the Arverni, and by far the best general Caesar had ever met in his Gallic campaign. Caesar's success in this, as in all his campaigns, was due to the unexampled rapidity of his movements. With incredible celerity he concentrated his forces and attacked the enemy before they were aware of his presence. After capturing several towns, he attacked Vercingetorix, who had strongly fortified himself at Gergovia (near Clermont). Caesar was unsuccessful in his attempt to take this town. Vercingetorix then took up his position at Alesia, but Caesar finally compelled its surrender, and soon after the Arverni and Haedui surrendered.

*Eighth
Campaign
53 B.C.
B. VIII.*

The last campaign was spent by Caesar in reducing several of the minor states, and in employing himself with the details of the pacification of Gaul. His policy towards the Gauls was conciliatory, and after so many years of fighting, Caesar left the province of Gaul loyal to the Roman cause, and patiently submissive to the Roman yoke.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



the uncompromising foe of Caesar, also declared that in case Caesar should appear in Rome, he would bring him up for trial for his acts in Gaul. The quarrel was evidently begun by the Senate and not by Caesar. It would have been in vain for Caesar to give up his command and retire into private life while Pompey was invested with the imperium and at the head of his legions at Rome. The tribune Curio laid before the Senate the proposal of Caesar, that the latter would disband his legions if Pompey would do the same. The proposal was made on January 1st, 49 B.C., when the new consuls, L. Cornelius Lentulus, and C. Claudius Marcellus, took office. With difficulty Marcus Antony (afterwards the triumvir), and L. Cassius Longinus, at that time tribunes of the plebs, obtained a hearing for the proposal of Caesar. At length, after a stormy debate, the motion was passed "that Caesar should disband his soldiers by a certain day, and if he did not, he should be declared a public enemy." This meant a declaration of war. Five days after the consuls were invested with dictatorial power, and Pompey was appointed to carry on the war in case Caesar did not obey.

*Final order
of the
Senate*

*Caesar
crosses the
Rubicon*

Caesar was at Ravenna when the news of the action of the Senate reached him. He was not long in maturing his plans. At midnight he left Ravenna with one legion and crossed the Rubicon, a small stream that divided his province from Italy proper. To do so without the permission of the Senate was equivalent to a declaration of war. Town after town succumbed to him, and by the beginning of February he had Umbria and Picenum at his feet. To all opponents he granted amnesty. In this respect the conduct of Caesar in carrying on the war against his fellow-citizens was in striking contrast with his policy in his Gallic campaign. By the middle of February he was reinforced by two other legions from Gaul.

*Pompey
flees to
Greece*

Pompey and the chiefs of the aristocracy, on hearing the action of Caesar, were thrown into consternation, and abruptly left Rome. Pompey hastened to Brundisium and afterwards crossed over to Epirus. Caesar with his troops, which now numbered six legions, followed Pompey to Brundisium, but lack of ships prevented his further advance at that time.

He had now Gaul and Italy on his side, and he decided to go over to Spain, which soon fell under his power. Most of the soldiers of Pompey's army in Spain enlisted under Caesar's banners.

Having acquired possession of Spain, Gaul, and Italy, Caesar embarked in the beginning of 48 B.C. at Brundisium, and finally the two armies met at Pharsalia when Caesar, in spite of disparity in numbers, gained a signal victory. Pompey fled to Lesbos, to Cyprus, and finally to Egypt, where he was treacherously murdered as he was being conveyed to the shore. Caesar pursued Pompey to Alexandria. A dispute at that time for the throne of Egypt arose between Ptolemy and his sister Cleopatra. Caesar sided with Cleopatra and established her on the throne.

Defeat of Pompey at Pharsalia 48 B.C.

Death of Pompey

After settling the affairs of Egypt, he marched northward against Pharnaces, son of Mithridates, whom he defeated at Zela. His laconic despatch to the Roman Senate—*veni, vidi, vici*—is well known. By the battle of Thapsus in Africa, 46 B.C., he crushed the only opposition left of Pompey's party in that country.

Victory at Zela

On his return to Rome he was made dictator for ten years. He then celebrated his four triumphs—over Gaul, Egypt, Pontus and Numidia—purposely avoiding all reference to the civil wars. His dictatorship was marked by many reforms.

Returns to Rome

In Spain an insurrection broke out, which, however, he crushed by the decisive battle at Munda, 45 B.C. On his return he was granted a triumph. The Senate at once began to shower honors on him. He was styled Father of his Country (*pater patrie*), statues of him were erected in the temples, his effigy was placed on coins, the month *Quinctilis* was changed to *Julius*. By his office of Imperator for life he was the supreme ruler of the Roman world. He was consul for ten years, dictator and *praefectus morum* for life and practically all the offices of the state were centred in him.

Honors granted to Caesar

It may be said that he used his power mercifully. No proscriptions followed his assumption of absolute power. His mind was bent on schemes for the benefit of the Roman

Plans of Caesar

world. He proposed to codify the Roman laws, to establish public libraries, to enlarge the harbor of Ostia, drain the Pomptine marshes, and cut a canal through the Isthmus of Corinth.

No doubt Caesar wished to perpetuate his power in his own family. Having no legitimate children, he made his sister's grandson, Octavius, his successor. He wished also to have the title as well as the power of king, and accordingly it was agreed that at the *Lupercalia*, Marc Antony should offer Caesar a diadem in public; but Caesar, seeing that the people were opposed to this, refused to accept the offer.

*Conspiracy
formed*

Meanwhile a conspiracy was afoot. It was probably started by C. Cassius, a personal foe, and included upwards of sixty persons, many of whom had taken active part in the war against Caesar. Among the most prominent of the conspirators was M. Junius Brutus, who had fought against him at Pharsalia, but was pardoned and had since been raised to the praetorship. It was arranged to assassinate Caesar 15th March—the *Ides of March*. This plan was carried out, and Caesar fell at the base of Pompey's statue pierced with twenty-three wounds.

*Death of
Caesar
44 B.C.*

IV

Character of Caesar

Caesar's death was a loss, not merely to Rome, but to the civilized world. Had his master genius executed the plans he had in mind, the whole of future history would have been changed. With his death were renewed those civil wars that brought carnage and disorder to the Roman world. Equally gifted as a jurist, statesman, historian and general, his versatility of genius was remarkable. His successes as a general were all achieved after his fortieth year. According to Cicero he might have been a great orator; his *Commentaries* prove that he was a great historian. His true greatness is shown by the entire absence of vanity. Power he loved above all things, and in employing the means to attain this, he probably was no worse or no better than the other Roman political leaders of his day.

V

Works of Caesar

(1) *Extant*; (a) *Commentarii de Bello Gallico*, in seven books. This work contains an account of the Conquest of Gaul, from 58 B.C. to 52 B.C. In the beginning of the first book we have the Conquest of the Helvetii mentioned, while the opening of the seventh refers to the death of Clodius as lately taking place. An eighth book was added by Aulus Hirtius, one of Caesar's officers, to complete the narrative.

(b) *Commentarii de Bello Civili*, in three books. This gives an account of the civil wars down to the time of the Alexandrine war. The history of the Alexandrine, African and Spanish campaigns was afterwards added in three books. *Hirtius* probably wrote the account of the *Alexandrine* campaign; *Oppius*, that of the *African*; the account of the *Spanish* war was written probably by a *Centurion* of Caesar's army, according to Niebuhr, who discovers a change in style and expression from that of the other two accounts.

(2) *Lost Works*;

(a) *Anticato*. A reply to Cicero's panegyric on Cato Uticensis, who fell at Thapsus, 46 B.C.

(b) *De Analogia*, or as Cicero calls it, *De Ratione Latine Loquendi*, dedicated to Cicero, and written while Caesar was crossing the Alps.

(c) *Libri Auspicioꝝ* or *Auguralia*, written 63 B.C. when Caesar was *Pontifex maximus*.

(d) *De Astris*, written also 63 B.C.

(e) *Apothegmata* or *Dicta Collectanea*, a collection of witticisms made at different times.

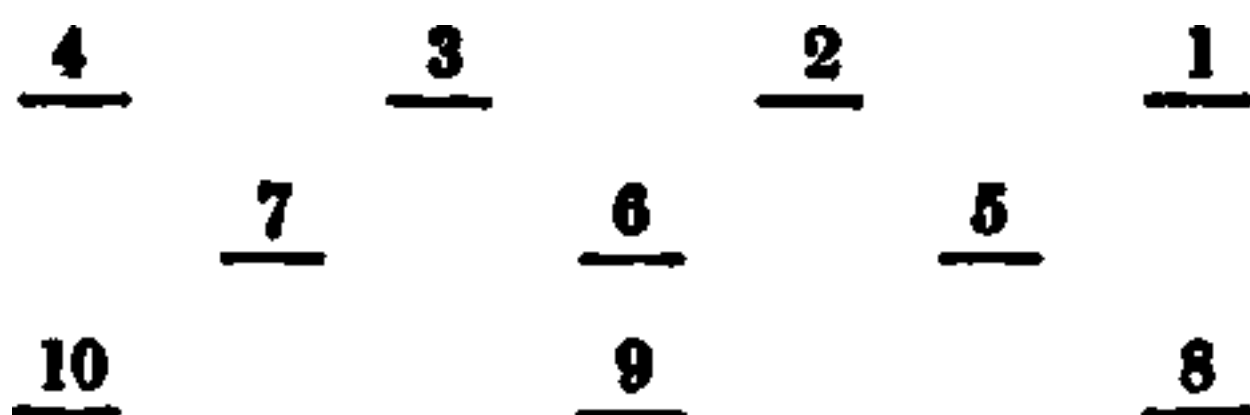
(f) *Poemata*, nearly all written in his youth. To these belong *Œdipus*, *Laudes Herculis*, and *Iter* (describing his going to Spain in 46 B.C.).

VI

The Roman Army

Infantry The legion (*legio*) numbered in Caesar's time from 3,000 to 5,000 infantry and 300 cavalry. The infantry (*peditatus*) was divided into 10 cohorts (*cohortes*); each cohort into 3 maniples (*manipuli*), and each maniple into 2 centuries (*centuriae*). The cavalry (*alae, equitatus*) was divided into 10 *turmae*, each *turma* into 3 *decuriae* or *equada*. Generally, the effective strength of a legion was 3,600 infantry; so that a cohort would number 360 men; a maniple, 120; a century, 60; a *turma*, 30; a squad of cavalry, 10. The variation in number of the legion would arise from furloughs, sickness, losses in battle, for usually such losses were not filled by new recruits, since such recruits were usually formed into new legions. Legions were numbered according to their enrolment.

Acies triplex The usual formation in battle was the *acies triplex*. Four cohorts formed the first line, three the second, and three the third, thus:—



Light armed The men usually stood 10 deep, so that each cohort would have a front of from 30 to 40 men. We have no means of knowing the space between the different cohorts, or even between the maniples. The cavalry was usually posted on the wings (*alae*); so were the light-armed troops (*velites*), such as the slingers (*funditores*) and bowmen (*agittarii*).

Artisans Attached to the army were the engineers and artisans (*fabri*), often formed into a separate company under a chief engineer (*praefectus fabrum*). These were employed in building bridges, building vessels, constructing winter quarters, repairing weapons. When Caesar was in Britain, the *fabri* were scattered among the legions, and not formed as a separate corps. (*B. V, 11.*)

The artillery of the Romans (*tormenta*) consisted of large ^{Artillery} engines formed on the principle of the cross-bow. These were *catapultae*, *ballistae*, and *scorpiones*. The *catapultae* hurled large arrows and darts; the *ballistae* threw large stones, while the *scorpiones* were smaller than the *catapultae* and had a less range. In sieges the battering-ram (*aries*) was often used.

VII

The Officers of the Army

The officers of the army were:—

The *Commander* (*imperator, dux belli*) appointed by the *Imperator* Senate. He possessed the *imperium*, and his power was practically unlimited in the field. He usually received the title *imperator* after his first successful battle with the enemy.

Under him were the *legati* or staff officers appointed by the *Legati* Senate. They were of senatorial rank, i.e., they had held before their appointment a curule office, as consul, praetor, chief aedile, or censor. The Senate appointed them and also determined the number. Caesar at first had six and afterwards ten.

The *quaestores* were elected annually by the people. They ^{Quaestores} were attached to the general or the governor of a province. They managed all financial affairs connected with the army, had charge of the money chest, paid the soldiers, provided the food and clothing. They corresponded to the modern quartermaster or paymaster.

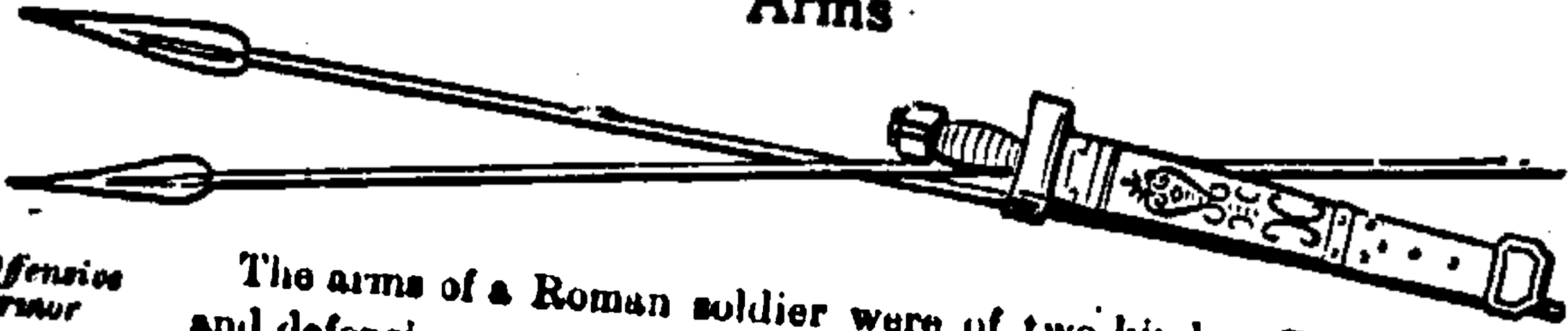
The *tribuni militum* were six in number to each legion, ^{Tribuni Militum} appointed by the Senate. They were not all exercising this power at once. Probably one held the command for two months. They kept the roll-call, attended to the levying, discipline, equipment of the troops, presided at court-martials, and took part in the council of war.

The *centuriones* were sixty in number in each legion, and ^{Centuriones} were appointed by the general. The six centurions of the first cohort were admitted to the council of war. These were called *primipili*. The centurions carried a wand (*vitis*) as a badge of office.

INTRODUCTION

VIII

Arms



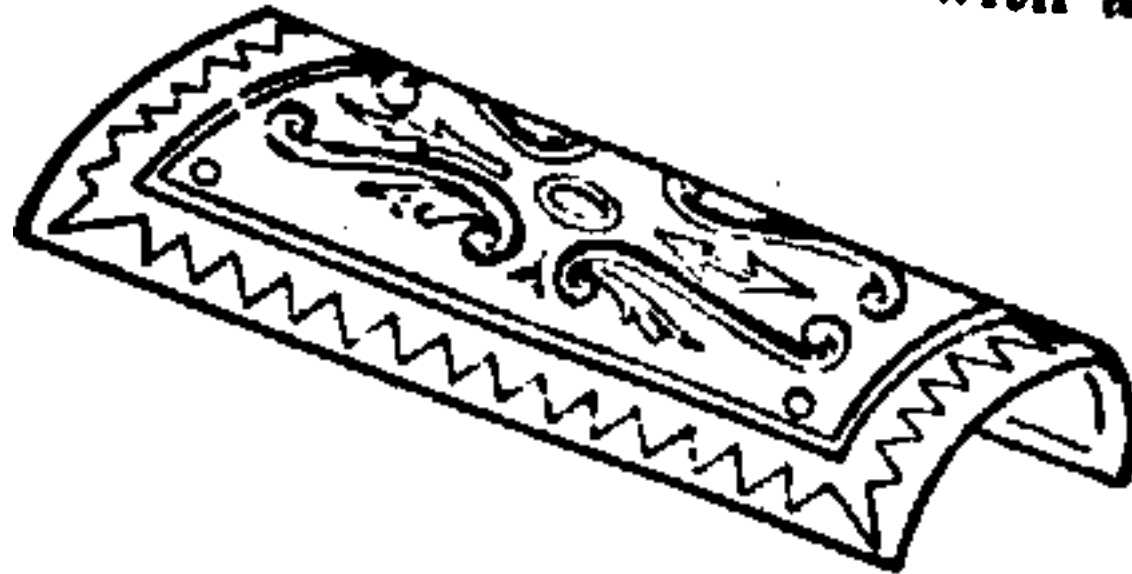
Offensive
armor

The arms of a Roman soldier were of two kinds, offensive and defensive.

(a) *Offensive weapons.* The regular soldier (*miles legionarius*) was armed with (1) a short sword (*gladius*), about two feet long and double-edged. It was kept in a light scabbard hung from a belt (*balteus*) passing over the left shoulder to the right side. The other offensive weapon was (2) the javelin (*pilum*), a strong heavy pike, consisting of a square shaft of wood four feet long, into which was fitted a long slender iron shank ending in a barbed head.

Defensive
armor

(b) *Defensive weapons* consisted of (1) helmet (*cassis* of bronze or *galea* of leather) surmounted with a white crest;



SCUTUM.



CLYPEUS.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of
human knowledge in
797,885 volumes

Instant access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

X

The Musical Instruments

**Musical
instruments**

The musical instruments of the army were (1) *tuba*, trumpet; straight and deep-toned, and used to give the order for the advance or retreat; (2) *bucina* and *cornu* crooked, having a shrill tone, and generally used to indicate a change in the watch; (3) *lituus*, formed like an augur's staff, and used for cavalry.

XI

The Army on the March

The army on the march may be divided into:—

**Divisions of
army on the
march**

(1) *agmen primum*, or van; (2) *exercitus*, *agmen bylonum*, or main body; (3) *agmen novissimum*, or rear. The van was generally composed of light-armed troops of infantry or cavalry. Their chief duty was to find out the force of the enemy, or to hold the enemy at bay till the main body arrived. The main body, with the baggage train (*impedimenta*), followed. The rear consisted of cavalry, or light-armed skirmishers. The average march (*iter justum*) was from six to seven hours, or from fifteen to twenty miles a day. On a forced march (*iter magnum*) fifty miles were often covered. On the march the legionary carried his pack (*sarcina*), in which he had to carry his corn (*frumentum*), cooking utensils (*vasa*), his arms, blanket, and two stakes (*valli*).

XII

The Army in Camp

Metatores

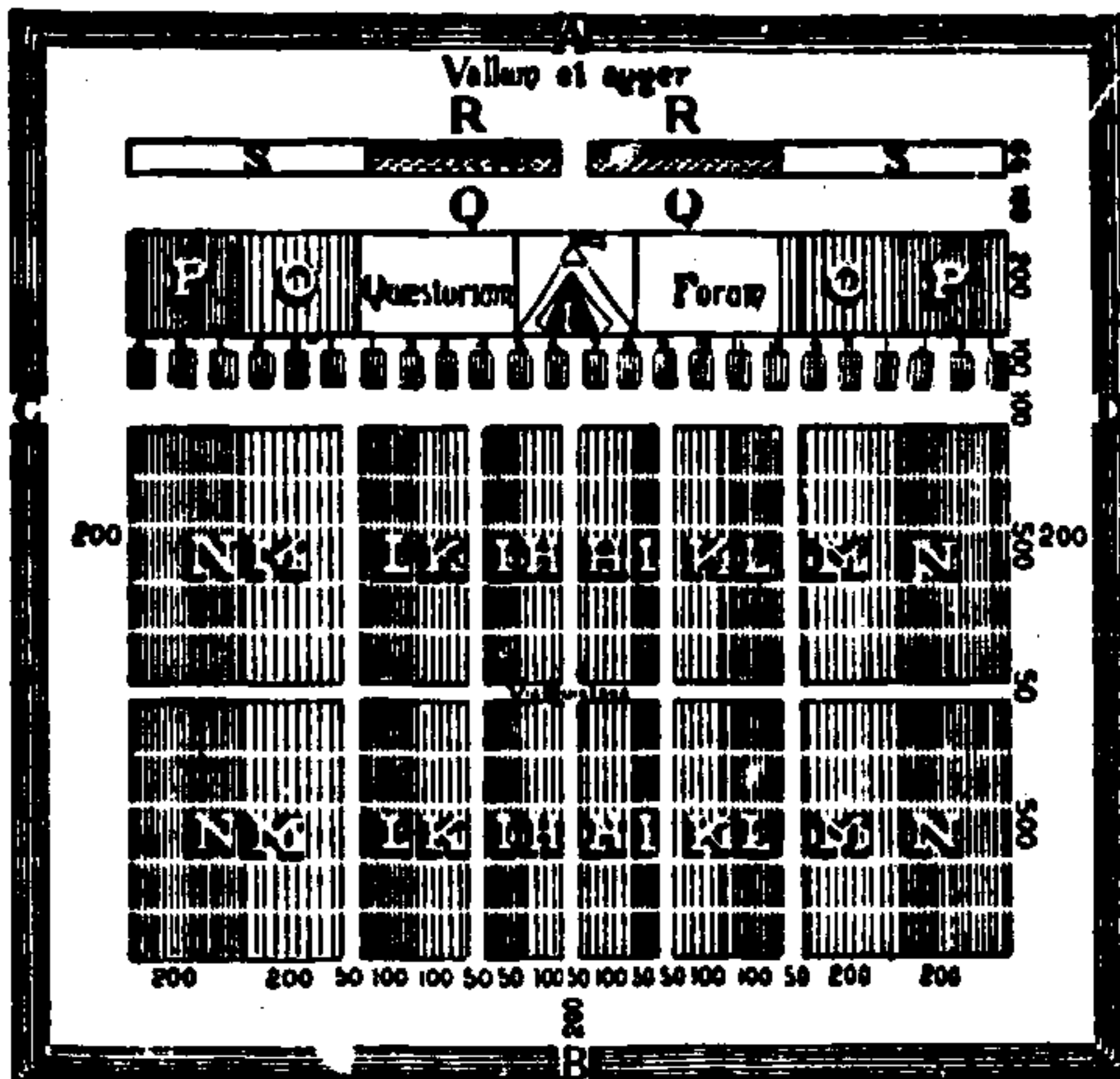
When an army was on the march, men (*metatores*) were sent forward to select a place suitable for a camp. If possible, high ground (*locus superior*) was selected. The camp was square or oblong. An embankment (*vallum*), formed from the ground thrown up from the ditch (*fossa*), surrounded the camp. The camp had four gates: (1) *porta praetoria*, near the *praetorium*, or the general's tent, facing the enemy; (2) *porta decumana*, opposite to this; (3) *porta principalis*

**Gates of the
Camp**

sinistra, on the left; (4) *porta principalis dextra*, on the right. Connecting the two latter was the *via principalis*, and parallel to the street was the *via quintana*. Connecting the *porta praetoria* and *porta decumana* was the *via praetoria*:

The subjoined cut will explain this.

PLAN OF A CONSULAR CAMP



This is the camp described by Polybius:—

The lines across the cavalry, etc., denote the divisions of troops or maniples.
A Praetorian gate.
B Decuman gate.
Q *Porta principalis sinistra*.
D *Porta principalis dextra*.
E Praetorium.

H Roman cavalry.
I Triarii.
K Principes and Velites.
L Hastati and Velites.
M Cavalry of allies.
N Infantry of allies.
O Consul's and Quæstor's horse guards.
P do. foot guards.
Q Extraordinary cavalry of the allies.

R do. foot of the allies.
S Strangers and occasional allies.
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12
 The twelve tribunes.
a b c d e f g h i j k l
 The prefects of allies.
 *. The figures on the right, and bottom, are the measures of length in feet.

The average pay of the legionary in Caesar's time was 12½ cents; that of the centurion was 25 cents. Often their pay was increased from the sale of booty.

C. JULII CAESARIS
COMMENTARIORUM
DE BELLO GALLICO
LIBER QUARTUS

Caesar determined to invade Britain; his reasons for crossing.

20. Exigua parte aetatis reliqua, Caesar, etsi in his locis, quod omnis Gallia ad septentriones vergit, maturae sunt hiemes, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod omnibus fere Gallicis bellis hostibus nostris inde subministrata auxilia intellegebāt; et, si tempus anni ad bellum gerendum deficeret, tamen magno sibi usui fore arbitrabatur, si modo insulam adisset et genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portus, aditus cognovisset; quae omnia fere Gallis erant incognita. Neque enim temere praeter mercatores illo adit quisquam, neque his ipsis quicquam praeter oram maritimam atque eas regiones, quae sunt contra Gallias, notum est. Itaque vocatis ad se undique mercatoribus, neque quanta esset insulae magnitudo, neque quae aut quantae nationes incolerent, neque

NOTE.—The numeral after a verb shows the conjugation. If a verb is regular, the conjugation is simply indicated.

exiguus, -a, -um, adj., small.

reliqua, -a, -um, adj., remaining.

septentrionēs, -um, M., the seven stars forming the constellation of the Great Bear, hence the North.

vergō, 3, no pf., no sup., incline, slope.

mātūrus, -a, -um, adj., early.

contendō, 3, -dī, -tum, v. intr., proceed.

subministrō, 1, furnish secretly:

dēficiō, 3, -fēci, -fectum, v. intr., be insufficient.

modo, adv., only.

perspiciō, 3, -spexi, -spectum, v. tr., observe, become thoroughly acquainted with.

aditus, ūs, M., approach, landing place.

incognitus, -a, -um, adj., unknown.

temere, adv., without reason.

illō, adv., thither.

incolō, 3, colui, no sup., v. tr., live in, inhabit.

quom unum belli haberent aut quibus institutis uterentur, neque qui essent ad majorum navium multitudinem idonei portus, reperire poterat.

Sends Volusenus, who returns and reports to him.

21. Ad haec cognoscenda, priusquam periculum faceret, idoneum esse arbitratus, Caium Volusenum cum navi longa praemittit. Huic mandat, ut exploratis omnibus rebus ad se quam primum revertatur. Ipse cum omnibus copiis in Morinos proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trajectus. Huc naves undique ex finitimis regionibus, et quam superiore aestate ad Veneticum bellum effecerat classem, jubet convenire. Interim, consilio ejus cognito, et per mercatores perlato ad Britannos, a compluribus ejus insulae civitatibus ad eum legati veniunt, qui polliceantur obsides dare atque imperio populi Romani obtemperare. Quibus auditis, liberaliter pollicitus, hortatusque, ut in ea sententia permanerent, eos domum remittit; et cum iis una Commium, quem ipse Atrebatibus superatis regem ibi constituerat, cujus et virtutem et consilium probabat, et quem sibi fidelem

ūsus, ūs, M., experience.

institutum, -i, N., custom, usage.

reperiō, 4, repperi, repertum, v. tr., find out, learn.

cognoscō, 3, cognōvi, cognitum, v. tr., learn, ascertain.

mandō, 1, v. intr. (governs dat.), command, instruct.

explorō, 1, v. tr., investigate.

inde, adv., thence, from that point.

trajectus, ūs, M., passage.

perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, v. tr., carry through, report.

complūrēs, -plūria, adj., pl., several.

polliceor, 2, pollicitus, v. dep., promise.

obtemperō, 1 (governs dat.), obey.

liberāliter, adv., kindly.

sententia, -ae, F., feeling, sentiment.

unā, adv.; unā cum, along with.

Atrebātēs, -ium, M., pl., the Atrebatas.

constituō, 3, -stitul, -stitutum, v. tr., establish.

probō, 1, v. tr., approve of.

fidēlis, -e, adj., faithful.

arbitratur, cujusque auctoritas in iis regionibus magni habebatur, mittit. Huic imperat, quas possit adeat civitates horteturque, ut populi Romani fidem sequantur, seque celeriter eo venturum nuntiet. / Volusenus, perspectis regionibus omnibus, quantum ei facultatis dari potuit, qui navi egredi ac se barbaris committere non auderet, quinto die ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspexisset renuntiat.

Caesar levies hostages from the Morini.

22. Dum in his locis Caesar navium parandarum causa moratur, ex magna parte Morinorum ad eum legati venerunt, qui se de superioris temporis consilio excusarent, quod homines barbari et nostrae consuetudinis imperiti bellum populo Romano fecissent, seque ea, quae imperasset, facturos pollicerentur. Hoc sibi satis opportune Caesar accidisse arbitratus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volebat, neque belli gerendi propter anni tempus facultatem habebat neque has tantularum rerum occupationes sibi Britanniae anteponendas judicabat, magnum iis obsidum numerum imperat. Quibus adductis, eos in fidem recepit. Navibus

magnū (gen. of value), of great value.

habedō, 2, v. tr., hold, consider.

facultās, -ātis, F., opportunity.

ēgredior, -dī, ēgressus, v. dep., go out, disembark.

committō, 3, -misi, -missum, v. tr., intrust.

audeō, 2, ausus sum, v. semi-dep., dare.

excūsō, 1, v. tr., excuse, justify.

consuetūdō, -inis, F., custom.

imperitus, -a, -um (governs gen.), adj., unacquainted with.

satis, adv., enough, sufficiently.

opportūnē, adv., opportunely.

accidō, 3, accidī, v. intr., happen.

accidit, **accidēre**, **accidit**, v. impers., it happens.

tergum, -ī, N., back.

relinquō, 3, -liquī, -lictum, v. tr., leave, leave behind.

tantulus, -a, -um, adj., trifling.

occupātiō, -ōnis, F., business, engagement.

antepōnō, 3, -posui, -positum, v. tr., place before, prefer.

iudicō, 1, v. tr., judge, decide.

circiter octoginta onerariis cunctis contractisque, quot satis esse ad duas transportandas legiones existimabat, quicquid praeterea navium longarum habebat, quaestori, legatis, praefectisque distribuit. Huc accedebant octodecim onerariae naves, quae ex eo loco ab millibus passuum octo vento tenebantur, quominus in eundem portum pervenire possent; has equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Quinto Titurio Sabinus et Lucio Aurunculeio Cottae legatis in Menapios atque in eos pagos Morinorum, ab quibus ad eum legati non venerant, deducendum dedit. Publium Sulpicium Rufum legatum cum eo praesidio, quod satis esse arbitrabatur, portum tenere jussit.

Caesar reaches Britain.

23. His constitutis rebus, nactus idoneam ad navigandum tempestatem, tertia fere vigilia solvit equitesque in ulteriorem portum progredi et naves conscendere et se sequi jussit. A quibus cum id paulo tardius esset administratum, ipse hora diei circiter quarta cum primis navibus Britanniam attingit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositas hostium

cōgō, 3, coēgi, coactum, v. tr.,
force, collect.

contrahō, 3, -traxi, -tractum, v.
tr., bring together.

existimō, 1, v. intr., think, con-
sider.

praeterea, adv., besides.

quaestor, -ōris, M., quarter-master.

praefectus, -i, M., captain.

distribuō, 3, -ui, -ūtum, v. tr.,
divide.

accēdō, 3, -cessi, -cessum, v. intr.,
am added.

nanciscor, 3, nactus, v. dep.,
obtain.

tempestās, -ātis, F., storm,
weather.

solvō, 3, solvi, solūtum, v. tr.,
loosen, set sail.

conscendō, 3, -di, -sum, v. tr., go
on board.

paulō, adv., a little.

tardē, adv., slowly.

administrō, 1, v. tr., carry out.

atingō, 3, attingi, no sup., v. tr.,
reach.

expōnō, 3, -posui, -positum, v.
tr., draw up.

copias armatas conspexit. Cujus loci haec erat natura: adeo montibus angustis mare continebatur, uti ex locis superioribus in litus telum adjici posset. Hunc ad egrediendum nequaquam idoneum arbitratus locum, dum reliquae naves eo convenirent, ad horam nonam in ancoris expectavit. Interim, legatis tribunisque militum convocatis, et quae ex Voluseno cognovisset, et quae fieri vellet, ostendit, monuitque, ut rei militaris ratio, maxime ut maritimae res postularent, ut quae celerem atque instabilem motum haberent, ad nutum et ad tempus omnes res ab iis administrarentur. His dimissis, et ventum et aestum uno tempore nactus secundum, dato signo, et sublatis ancoris, circiter millia passuum septem ab eo loco progressus, aperto ac plano litore naves constituit.

The natives attack the Romans.

24. At barbari, consilio Romanorum cognito, praemisso equitatu et essedariis, quo plerumque genere in proeliis uti consuerunt, reliquis copiis subsecuti, nostros navibus egredi.

armatus, -a, -um, p. p. p. used as an adj., armed.

conspiciō, 3, -spexi, -spectum, v. tr., observe, spy.

natura, -ae, F., character.

adeo, adv., so, to such an extent.

angustus, -a, -um, adj., narrow, precipitous.

contineō, 2, -tinui, -tentum, v. tr., hem in.

adjiciō, 3, -jēci, -jectum, v. tr., throw upon.

nequaquam, adv., by no means.

ancora, -ae, F., anchor.

fiō, fieri, factus sum, v. irreg., be done.

ostendō, 3, -di, -tum, v. tr., show, point out.

ratio, -ōnis, F., method.

māximē, adv., especially.

instābilis, -e, adj., unsteady.

mōtus, -ūs, M., motion.

nūtus, -ūs, M., nod.

ventus, -i, M., wind.

aestus, -ūs, M., tide.

tollō, 3, sustuli, sublātum, v. tr., raise up, weigh.

apertus, -a, -um, adj., open.

plānus, -a, -um, adj., level.

at, conj., but.

essedārii, -ōrum, M., pl., charioteers.

plērumque, adv., generally.

consuescō, 3, -suēvi, -suētum, 7, intr., become accustomed.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

incitari, et ad latus apertum hostium constitui, atque inde fundis, sagittis, tormentis hostes propelli ac summoveri jussit; quae res magno usui nostris fuit. Nam, et navium figura et remorum motu et inusitato genere tormentorum permoti, barbari constiterunt ac paulum modo pedem retulerunt. Atque, nostris militibus cunctantibus, maxime propter altitudinem maris, qui decimae legionis aquilam ferebat, contestatus deos, ut ea res legioni feliciter eveniret: "Desilite," inquit, "commilitones, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prodere; ego certe meum reipublicae atque imperatori officium praestitero." Hoc cum magna voce dixisset, ex navi se projecit, atque in hostes aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostri, cohortati inter se, ne tantum dedecus admitteretur, universi ex navi desiluerunt. Hos item ex proximis navibus cum conspexissent, subsequuti hostibus appropinquarunt.

Rout of the enemy.

26. Pugnatum est ab utrisque acriter. Nostri tamen, quod neque ordines servare neque firmiter insistere neque

funda, -ae, F., sling.

tormentum, -i, N., engine.

propellō, 3, -pull, -pulsum, v. tr.,
drive forward.

summoverō, 2, -mōvi, -mōtum,
v. tr., dislodge.

figūra -ae, F., shape.

cunctor, 1, v. dep., waver, hesitate.

altitūdō, -inis, F., height.

contestor, 1, v. dep., invoke.

eveniō, 4, -veni, -ventum, v. intr.,
turn out, happen.

commilitō, -ōnis, M., comrade.

prōdō, 3, prōdidī, prōditum, v.
tr., betray.

certē, adv., at least.

officium, -i, N., duty.

praestō, 1, -stiti, -stitum, v. tr.,
show, perform.

prōjiciō, 3, -jēci, -jectum, v. tr.,
throw forward.

dedecus, -oris, N., disgrace.

admittō, 3, -misi, -missum, v. tr.,
incur.

universi, -ae, -a, adj. pl., all to-
gether, in a body.

item, adv., likewise.

appropinquō, 1 (governs dat.),
approach.

uterque, utraque, utrumque, pro.
adj., either, both.

ordō, -inis, M., rank.

firmiter, adv., steadily.

insistō, 3, -stiti, no sup., stand.

signa subsequi poterant, atque alius alia ex navi, quibuscumque signis occurrerat, se aggregabat, magno opere perturbabantur. Hostes vero, notis omnibus vadis, ubi ex litore aliquos singulares ex navi egredientes conspexerant, incitatis equis impeditos adoriebantur, plures paucos circumstabant, alii ab latere aperto in universos tela conjiciebant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphas longarum navium, item speculatoria navigia militibus compleri jussit et, quos laborantes conspexerat, iis subsidia submittebat. Nostri, simul in arido constiterunt, suis omnibus consecutis, in hostes impetum fecerunt, atque eos in fugam dederunt; neque longius prosequi potuerunt, quod equites cursum tenere atque insulam capere non potuerant. Hoc unum ad pristinam fortunam Caesari defuit.

Several states submit to Caesar.

27. Hostes proelio superati, simul atque se ex fuga receperunt, statim ad Caesarem legatos de pace miserunt, obsides daturus quaeque imperasset sese facturos polliciti sunt. Una cum his legatis Commius Atrebas venit, quem

quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, rel. pron., whoever, whatever.

signum, -i, N., standard.

occurrō, 3, -curri, -cursum (governs dat.), meet.

aggregō, 1, v. tr., join, unite.

perturbō, 1, v. tr., disorder, throw into confusion.

vērō, conj., but, on the other hand.

vadum, -i, N., ford.

aliquis, aliquae, aliquid, adj. pron., any.

singulāris, -e, adj., singly.

adorior, -oriri, -ortus, v. dep., attack.

scapha, -ae, F., light boat.

speculātōrius, -a, -um, adj., spy, scouting.

nāvigium, -i, M., boat.

complēō, 2, -plēvi, -plētum, v. tr., fill, man.

labōrō, 1, v. intr., be in trouble.

subsidium, -i, N., support, reinforcement.

pristinus, -a, -um, adj., former.

dēsum, -esse, -sui, v. intr., (governs dat.), am lacking.

supra demonstraveram a Caesare in Britanniam praemissum. Hunc illi e navi egressum, cum ad eos oratoris modo imperatoris mandata deferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula conjecerant: tum, proelio facto, remiserunt et in petenda pace ejus rei culpam in multitudinem contulerunt et propter imprudentiam ut ignosceretur, petiverunt. Caesar questus, quod, cum ultro in continentem legatis missis pacem ab se petissent, bellum sine causa intulissent, ignoscere imprudentiae dixit obsidesque imperavit; quorum illi partem statim dederunt, partem ex longinquiore locis arcessitam paucis diebus sese daturus dixerunt. Interea suos remigrare in agros jusserunt, principesque undique convenire et se civitatesque suas Caesari commendare coeperunt.

Fate of the eighteen cavalry troop ships.

28. His rebus pace confirmata, post diem quartum, quam est in Britanniam ventum, naves octodecim, de quibus supra demonstratum est, quae equites sustulerant, ex superiore portu leni vento solverunt. Quae cum appropinquarent Britanniae et ex castris viderentur, tanta tempestas subito coorta est, ut

suprā, adv., above.

dēmonstrō, 1, v. tr., show, point out.

modō, in the manner of.

mandātum, -i, N., order.

dēferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, v. tr., deliver.

comprehendō, 3, -di, -sum, v. tr., seize.

vinculum, -i, N., chain.

culpa, -ae, F., blame, fault.

ignoscō, 3, ignōvi, ignōtum, v. intr., (governs dat.) pardon.

queror, queri, questus, v. dep., complain.

ultro, adv., of one's own accord.

continens, -ntis, (sc. terra) continent.

arcessō, 3, arcessivi, arcessitum, v. tr., send for, summon.

remigrō, 1, v. intr., go back; return.

commendō, 1, v. tr., intrust

confirmō, 1, v. tr., establish.

lēnis, -e, adj., gentle.

coorior, -oriri, -ortus, v. dep., arise.

die quarto

time temporal - P. J.

nulla earum cursum tenere posset, sed alias eodem, unde erant profectae, referrentur; alias ad inferiorem partem insulae, quae est propius solis occasum, magno sui cum periculo dejicerentur: quae tamen, ancoris jactis, cum fluctibus complerentur, necessario adversa nocte in altum provectae continentem petierunt.

A storm and high tides wreck Caesar's transports.

29. Eadem nocte accidit, ut esset luna plena, qui dies maritimos aestus maximos in Oceano efficere consuevit, nostrisque id erat incognitum. Ita uno tempore et longas naves, quibus Caesar exercitum transportandum curaverat, quasque in aridum subduxerat, aestus compleverat; et onerarias, quae ad ancoras erant deligatae, tempestas afflictabat, neque ulla nostris facultas aut administrandi aut auxiliandi dabatur. Compluribus navibus fractis, reliquae cum essent—funibus, ancoris reliquisque armamentis amissis—ad navigandum inutiles, magna, id quod necesse erat accidere, totius exercitus perturbatio facta est. Neque enim naves erant alias, quibus reportari possent, et omnia deerant, quae ad reficiendas eas (naves) usui sunt, et, quod omnibus constabat hiemari in Gallia oportere, frumentum his in locis in hiemem provisum non erat.

eodem, adv., to the same place.

necessario, adv., of necessity.

provehō, 3. -vexi, -vectum, v. tr.,
carry forward, carry out.

efficiō, 3. -feci, -fectum, v. tr.,
make, render.

subducō, 3. -dūxi, -ductum, v. tr.,
draw up on shore, beach.

deligō, 1, v. tr., bind.

afflicto, 1, v. tr., shatter.

administrō, 1, v. tr., manage.

auxilior, 1, v. dep., aid.

frangō, 3. -frēgi, -fractum, v. tr.,
wreck, shatter.

fūnia, -is, M., rope, cable,
armamentum, -i, N., tackle.

inūtilis, -e, adj., useless.

perturbātiō, -ōnis, F., panic.

reficiō, 3. -feci, -fectum, v. tr.,
repair.

constat, constāre, constitit, v.
impera., it is agreed.

oportet, -ēre, oportuit, v. impera.,
it behoves, ought.

prōvideō, 2. -vidi, -visum, v. tr.,
foresee, provide.

a thing which was inevitable

Conspiracy of British Chiefs

30. Quibus rebus cognitis, principes Britanniae, qui post proelium factum ad ea, quae iuraverat Caesar, ~~facienda~~ ^{con-}venierant, inter se collocuti, ^{since} cum equites et naves et frumentum Romanis deesse intellegerent, et paucitatem militum ex castrorum exiguitate cognoscerent, quae hoc erant etiam angustiora, quod sine impedimentis Caesar legiones transportaverat, ^{after} optimum factu esse duxerunt, rebellione facta, frumento commeatuque nostros prohibere, et rem in hiemem producere, ^{adjective} quod, iis superatis, aut reditu interclusis, neminem postea belli inferendi causa in Britanniam transiturum confidebant. Itaque, rursus conjuratione facta, paulatim ex castris discedere ac suos clam ex agris deducere coeperunt.

Caesar suspects their intentions; forms plans accordingly.

31. At Caesar, etsi nondum eorum consilia cognoverat, ^(although) tamen et ex eventu navium suarum et ex eo, quod obsides dare intermiserant, fore id, quod accidit, suspicabatur. Itaque ad omnes casus subsidia comparabat. Nam et frumentum ex

colloquor, -loqui, -locutus, v. dep.,
converse.

intellego, 3, -lexi, -lectum, v. tr.,
perceive.

paucitas, -atis, F., fewness.

exiguitas, -atis, F., smallness.

hoc, for this reason.

factu, supine in -u, to be done.

rebellio, -onis, F., renewal of war.

commeatus, -us, M., supplies.

reditus, -us, M., return.

intercludo, 3, -clusi, -clusum, v.
tr., out off.

nemo, acc. neminem, no one.

postea, adv., afterwards.

transo, -ire, -it, -itum, v. tr.,
go across, cross over.

confido, 3, confisus sum, v. semi-
dep., trust.

rursus, adv., again.

conjuratio, -onis, F., league.

paulatim, adv., gradually.

discedo, 3, -cessi, -cessum, v. intr.,
go away, depart.

clam, adv., secretly.

nondum, adv., not yet.

eventus, -us, M., accident.

intermitto, 3, -misi, -missum, v.
tr., cease, stop.

suspikor, 1, v. dep., suspect.

casus, -us, M., emergency.

subsidium, -i, N., resource.

Handwritten notes in the top left corner, possibly including the number '14' and some illegible scribbles.

mp. agris cotidie in castra conferebat, et quas gravissime afflictas erant naues, earum materia atque aere ad reliquas reficiendas utebatur; et quas ad eas res erant usui ex continenti com- portari jubebat. Itaque, cum id summo studio a militibus administraretur, duodecim navibus amissis, reliquis ut navigari commode posset, effecit. Sal. Purp

Sudden attack of the British.

32. Dum ea geruntur, legione ex consuetudine una frumentatum missa, quas appellabatur septima, neque ulla ad id tempus belli suspicione interposita, cum pars hominum in agris remaneret, pars etiam in castra ventitaret, ii, qui pro portis castrorum in statione erant, Caesari renuntiarunt, pulverem majorem, quam consuetudo ferret, in ea parte videri, quam in partem legio iter fecisset. Caesar id, quod erat, suspicatus, aliquid novi a barbaris initum consilii, cohortes, quas in stationibus erant, secum in eam partem proficisci, duas ex reliquis in stationem succedere, reliquas armari et confestim sese subsequi jussit. Cum paulo longius a castris processisset, suos ab hostibus premi, atque aegre sustinere, et conferta legione ex omnibus partibus tela conjici animadvertit.

cotidiē, adv., daily.
affligō, 3, -fixi, -flictum, v. tr.,
shatter.
materia, -ae, F., timber.
aes, -aeris, N., metal.
amittō, 3, -misi, -missum, v. tr.,
lose.
commodē, adv., conveniently.

ineō, -ire, -ii, -itum, v. tr., go into,
enter upon, form.
succēdō, 3, -cessi, -cessum, v.
intr., take the place of.
armō, 1, v. tr., arm.
confestim, adv., immediately.
prōcēdō, 3, -cessi, -cessum, v.
intr., advance.

Nam quod, omni ex reliquis partibus demesso frumento, pars una erat reliqua, suspicati hostes huc nostris esse venturos noctu in silvis delituerant; tum dispersos, depositis armis, in metendo occupatos, subito adorti, paucis interfectis, reliquos incertis ordinibus perturbaverant, simul equitatu atque essedis circumdederant.

The British mode of fighting.

33. Genus hoc est ex essedis pugnae. Primo per omnes partes perequitant, et tela conjiciunt, atque ipso terrore equorum et strepitu rotarum, ordines plerumque perturbant; et cum se inter equitum turmas insinuaverunt, ex essedis desiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurigae interim paulatim ex proelio excedunt, atque ita currus collocant, ut, si illi a multitudine hostium premantur, expeditum ad suos receptum habeant. Ita mobilitatem equitum, stabilitatem peditum in proeliis praestant, ac tantum usu cotidiano et exercitatione

dēmētō, 3, -messui, -messum, v. tr., reap.

noctū, adv., in the night time.

dēlitescō, 3, -litui, no sup., lie hid, hide one's self.

dispersus, -a, -um, p. p. p. used as an adj., scattered.

metō, 3, messui, messum, v. tr., reap.

occupātus, -a, -um, p. p. p. used as an adj., engaged.

incertus, -a, -um, adj., uncertain, confused.

essedā, -ae, F., chariot.

circumdō, -dāre, -dedi, -datum, v. tr., surround.

primō, adv., at first.

perequitō, 1, v. intr., ride through, drive through.

terror, -ōris, M., fright, terror.

strepitus, -ūs, M., noise, din.

rota, -ae, F., wheel.

turma, -ae, F., squadron [of cavalry].

insinuō, 1, v. tr., cause to go into; insinuant se, they work their way into.

dēsiliō, 4, -silui, -cultum, v. intr., leap down.

proelior, 1, v. dep., fight.

auriga, -ae, M., charioteer.

interim, adv., meanwhile.

paulatim, adv., gradually.

receptus, -ūs, M., retreat.

mōbilitās, -ātis, F., mobility.

stabilitās, -ātis, F., steadiness.

cotidiānus, -a, -um, adj., daily.

exercitātiō, -ōnis, training, practice, exercise.

Present
General
whenever
future
less
vivid



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of
human knowledge in
797,885 volumes

Instant access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

caverunt et, quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum sui liberandi facultas daretur, si Romanos castris expulissent, demonstraverunt. His rebus celeriter magna multitudo peditatus equitatusque coacta, ad castra venerunt.

Defeat and pursuit of the enemy.

35. Caesar, etiam idem, quod superioribus diebus acciderat, fora videbat, ut, si essent hostes pulsi, celeritate periculum effugerent, tamen nactus equites circiter triginta, quos Commius Atrebas, de quo ante dictum est, secum transportaverat, legiones in acie pro castris constituit. Commisso proelio, diutius nostrorum militum impetum hostes ferre non potuerunt, ac terga verterunt. Quos tanto spatio secuti, quantum cursu et viribus efficere potuerunt complures ex iis occiderunt, deinde, omnibus longe lateque aedificiis incensis, se in castra receperunt.

Caesar makes peace; sets sail for Gaul.

36. Eodem die legati ab hostibus missi ad Caesarem de pace venerunt. His Caesar numerum obsidum, quem antea imperaverat, duplicavit eosque in continentem adduci iussit, quod, propinqua die aequinoctii, infirmis navibus, hiemi

praeda, -ae, F., booty, plunder.

perpetuus, -a, -um, adj., constant, unbroken; in perpetuum, forever.

expellō, 3, -pull, -pulsum, v. tr., drive out.

cōgō, 3, cōēgi, coactum, v. tr., collect.

celeritās, -ātis, F., speed.

effugiō, 3, -fūgi, -fugitum, v. tr., escape.

constituō, 3, -ui, -itum, v. tr., draw up, post.

committō, 3, -misi, -missum, v. tr., engage, engage in.

spatium, -i, N., distance.

tantus—quantus, as great as. #

cursus, -ūs, M., running.

occidō, 3, -cidi, -cisum, v. tr., cut down, kill, slay.

deinde, adv., then, next, afterwards.

incendō, 3, -di, -sum, v. tr., set on fire, burn.

antē, adv., before, previously.

duplicō, 1, v. tr., double, demand . . . double.

propinquus, -a, -um, adj., near.

aequinoctium, -i, N., equinox.

infirmus, -a, -um, adj., weak.

navigationem subjiciendam non existimabat. / Ipse, idoneam tempestatem nactus, paulo post mediam noctem naves solvit; quae omnes incolumes ad continentem pervenerunt; sed ex his onerariae duae eodem, quos reliquae, portus capere non potuerunt et paulo infra delatae sunt. /

Sudden attack of the Morini.

37. Quibus ex navibus cum essent expositi milites circiter trecenti, atque in castra contenderent, Morini, quos Caeser in Britanniam proficiscens pacatos reliquerat, spe praedae adducti, primo non ita ^{terribili} magno suorum numero circumsteterunt, ac, si sese interfici nollent, arma ponere jusserunt. Cum illi, orbe facto, sese defenderent, celeriter ad clamorem hominum circiter millia sex convenerunt. Qua re nuntiata, Caeser omnem ex castris equitatum suis auxilio misit. Interim nostri milites impetum hostium sustinuerunt, atque amplius horis quatuor fortissime pugnauerunt, et paucis vulneribus acceptis complures ex iis occiderunt. Postea vero quam equitatus noster in conspectum venit, hostes, abjectis armis, terga verterunt, magnusque eorum numerus est occisus.

subjiciō, 3, -jēci, -jectum, v. tr.,

place near, expose.

incolumis, -e, adj., safe.

onerārius, -a, -um, adj., of burden;

nāvis onerāria, a transport.

infra, adv., below.

dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, v. tr.,

carry down.

expōnō, 3, -posuī, -positum, v. tr.,

land, disembark.

trecenti, -ae, -a, num. adj., 300.

contendō, 3, -dī, -tum, v. intr.,

proceed, hasten.

pacātus, -a, -um, p. p. used as

adj., at peace.

circumsto, 1, -steti, -stātum, v.

tr., surround.

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, v. irreg., not..

wish, am unwilling.

orbis, -is, M., circle.

dēfendō, 3, -dī, -sum, v. tr., de-

fend, protect.

vulnus, -eris, N., wound.

accipiō, 3, -cēpi, -ceptum, v. tr.,

receive.

posteaquam, conj, after.

vērō, adv. conj., in truth, but,

however.

conspectus, -ūs, M., sight.

abjiciō, 3, -jēci, -jectum, v. tr.,

throw away.

Conquest of the Morini and Menapii.

38. Caesar postero die Titum Labienum legatum, cum iis legionibus, quas ex Britannia reduxerat, in Morinos, qui rebellionem fecerant, misit. Qui cum propter siccitates paludum, quo se reciperent, non haberent, quo perfugio superiore anno fuerant usi, omnes fere in potestatem Labieni venerunt. At Quintus Titurius et Lucius Cotta legati, qui in Menapiorum fines legiones duxerant, omnibus eorum agris vastatis, frumentis succisis, aedificiis incensis, quod Menapii se omnes in densissimas silvas abdiderant, se ad Caesarem receperunt. Caesar in Belgis omnium legionum hiberna constituit. Eo duae omnino civitates ex Britannia obsides miserunt, reliquae neglexerunt. His rebus gestis, ex litteris Caesaris dierum viginti supplicatio a senatu decreta est.

rebelliō, -ōnis, F., renewal of war.

siccitās, -ātis, F., dryness.

palūs, -ūdis, F., marsh.

perfugium, -i, N., refuge.

ferē, adv., almost, about.

potestās, -ātis, F., power.

frūmentum, -i, N., corn; pl., crops.

succidō, 3, -cidi, -cisum, v. tr., cut down.

abdō, 3, abdidī, abditum, v. tr., hide, conceal.

hibernus, -a, -um, adj., winter, wintry; hiberna, -ōrum, N., pl. (so. castra), winter camp, winter quarters.

eō, adv., thither.

omniō, adv., in all.

neglegō, 3, -lexi, -lectum, v. tr., neglect.

supplicatiō, -ōnis, F., thanksgiving.

dēcernō, 3, -crēvi, -crētum, v. tr., decree.

1) Pres. instead of a participle.
Implied motion (acc. in) abdo.

LIBER QUINTUS

Caesar orders a fleet to be built: The Pirustae give hostages.

In consulship of

1. L. Domitio Ap. Claudio consulibus, discedens ab hibernis Caesar in Italiam, ut quotannis facere consuerat, legatis imperat, quos legionibus praefecerat, uti quam plurimas possent hieme naves aedificandas veteresque reficiendas curarent. Earum modum formamque demonstrat. Ad celeritatem onerandi subductionesque paulo facit humiliores, quam quibus in nostro mari uti consuevimus, atque id eo magis, quod propter crebras commutationes aestuum minus magnos ibi fluctus fieri cognoverat; ad onera ac multitudinem jumentorum transportandam, paulo latiores, quam quibus in reliquis utimur maribus. Has omnes actuarias imperat fieri, quam ad rem humilitas multum adjuvat. Ea, quae sunt usui ad armandas naves, ex Hispania apportari jubet. Ipse, conventibus Galliae citerioris peractis, in Illyricum proficiscitur, quod a Pirustis finitimam partem provinciae incursionibus vastari audiebat. Eo cum venisset, civitatibus milites imperat

ut, conj., as.

quotannis, adv., yearly.

consuecō, 3, -suevi, -suetum, v.
intr., become accustomed;

consuevi, I am accustomed.

praeficiō, 3, -feci, -fectum, v. tr.,
(governs acc. and dat.), place
over, place in command of.

cūrō, 1, v. tr., care for (see general
vocab.)

modus, -i, M., measure, size.

forma, -ae, F., shape, plan.

onerō, 1, v. tr., load.

subductiō, -ōnis, F., drawing up
on shore, beaching.

humilis, -e, adj., low.

eō, adv., for this reason.

creber, -bra, -brum, adj., frequent.
commutatio, -ōnis, F., change.

jumentum, -i, N., baggage animal,
beast of burden.

actuarius, -a, -um, adj., driven by
oars (as well as sails), rowing,
fast sailing.

humilitas, -atis, F., lowness.

multum, adv., much.

adjuvō, 1, -jūvi, -jūtum, v. tr.,
aid, help.

apportō, 1, v. tr., bring.

conventus, -ūs, M., assize.

peragō, 3, -ēgi, -actum, v. tr.,
conduct, hold.

incursiō, -ōnis, F., raid, inroad.

certumque in locum convenire jubet. / Qua re nuntiata, Pirustae legatos ad eum mittunt, qui doceant nihil earum rerum publico factum consilio, seseque paratos esse demonstrant omnibus rationibus de injuriis satisfacere. Perceptatione eorum, Caesar obsides imperat eosque ad certum diem adduci jubet; nisi ita fecerint, sese bello civitatem persecuturum demonstrat. Iis ad diem adductis, ut imperaverat, arbitros inter civitates dat, qui litem aestiment poenamque constituent.

The soldiers praised for their zeal. Fleet ordered to rendezvous at Portus Itius.

2. His confectis rebus, conventibusque peractis, in citeriorem Galliam revertitur, atque inde ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eo cum venisset, circuitis omnibus hibernis, singulari militum studio, in summa omnium rerum inopia, circiter sexcentas ejus generis, cujus supra demonstravimus, naves et longas viginti

certus, -a, -um, adj., stated, definite, certain.

doceō, 2, -ui, doctum, v. tr., teach, inform, tell.

publicus, -a, -um, public, common.

parātus, -a, -um, p. p. p. used as adj., ready.

ratio, -ōnis, F., account, claim.

injūria, -ae, F., wrong, injustice.

satisfaciō, 3, -feci, -factum, v. tr., satisfy, meet.

percipiō, 3, -cepi, -ceptum, v. tr., take in, hear.

nisi, conj., unless, if . . . not.

ita, adv., so.

persequor, 3, -secutus, v. tr., follow up, pursue.

arbiter, -tri, M., arbitrator, assessor.

lis, litis, F., law suit, damages.

aestimō, 1, v. tr., value, estimate, assess.

poena, -ae, F., punishment, penalty.

revertor, reverti, reverti, reversum, v. semi-dep., turn back, return.

circueō, -ire, -i, -itum, v. tr., go around, visit.

singularis, -e, adj., remarkable, extraordinary.

studium, -i, N., zeal, enthusiasm.

inopia, -ae, F., want, lack, scarcity.

sexcenti, -ae, -a, num. adj., 600.

suprā, adv., above.

octo invenit instructas, neque multum abesse ab eo, quin paucis diebus deduci possint. Collaudatis militibus, atque iis qui negotio praefuerant, quid fieri velit, ostendit, atque omnes ad portum Itium convenire jubet, quo ex portu commodissimum in Britanniam trajectum esse cognoverat, circiter millium passuum triginta a continenti: huic rei quod satis esse visum est militum reliquit. Ipse cum legionibus expeditis quattuor et equitibus octingentis in fines Treverorum proficiscitur, quod hi neque ad concilia veniebant, neque imperio parebant, Germanosque Transrhenanos sollicitare dicebantur.

The Treveri and their rival chieftains.

3: Haec civitas longe plurimum totius Galliae equitatu valet, magnasque habet copias peditum, Rhenumque, ut supra demonstravimus, tangit. In ea civitate duo de principatu inter se contendebant, Indutiomarus et Cingetorix; e quibus alter, simul atque de Caesaris legionumque adventu cognitum.

inveniō, 4, vēnī, -ventum, v. tr.,
find.

instruō, 3, -struxī, -structum, v.
tr., draw up, build, equip.

dēdūco, 3, -dūxi, -ductum, v.
tr., draw down (into water),
launch.

collaudō, 1, v. tr., commend, praise.

negōtium, -ī, N., business, work.

praesum, -esse, -sul, v. intr.
(governs dat.), be in charge of.

fiō, fierī, factus sum, v. irreg.,
am done, become.

ostendō, 3, -dī, -tum, v. tr., show.

commodus, -a, -um, adj., fit,
handy, suitable, convenient.

trājectus, -ūs, M., passage.

circiter, adv., about.

videor, 2, visus, v. dep., seem,
appear.

expeditus, -a, -um, adj., free,
ready for action.

octingenti, -ae, -a, num. adj., 800.

concilium, -ī, N., council.

sollicitō, 1, tamper with, stir up.

longē, adv., by far.

plūrimum, adv., very, most.

valeō, 2, v. intr., am strong, have
power.

tangō, 3, tetigī, tactum, v. tr.,
touch, border on.

principātus, -ūs, M., leadership.

simul atque, conj., as soon as.

adventus, -ūs, M., arrival.

~~-----~~ ostendit. At Indutiomarus equitatum peditatumque cogere, iisque, qui per aetatem in armis esse non poterant, in silvam Arduennam abditis, quae ingenti magnitudine per medios fines Treverorum a flumine Rheno ad initium Remorum pertinet, bellum parare instituit. Sed posteaquam nonnulli principes ex ea civitate, et familiaritate Cingetorigis adducti, et adventu nostri exercitus perterriti, ad Caesarem venerunt, et de suis privatim rebus ab eo petere coeperunt, quoniam civitati consulere non possent, veritus, ne ab omnibus desereretur, Indutiomarus legatos ad Caesarem mittit: Sese idcirco ab suis discedere atque ad eum venire noluisse, quo facilius civitatem in officio contineret, ne omnis nobilitatis discessu plebs propter imprudentiam laboretur: itaque esse civitatem in sua potestate, seseque, si Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra venturum, suas civitatisque fortunas ejus fidei permissurum.

Gen. coordinated with a disjunctive.

officium, -i, N., duty, allegiance.
 deficiō, 3, -fēci, -fectum, v. intr.,
 fail, revolt.

confirmō, 1, v. tr., assure.

aetās, -ātis, F., age.

abdō, 3, -didi, -ditum, v. tr., hide,
 conceal.

ingens (gen. ingentis), adj., large,
 huge, immense.

initium, -i, N., beginning.

institūō, 3, -ui, -ūtum, v. tr., draw
 up, decide, begin.

fāmilīaritās, -ātis, F., intimacy,
 friendship.

privātim, adv., privately, indi-
 vidually.

quoniam, conj., since.

consulō, 3, -sului, -sultum, v. tr.,
 with acc. consult; intr. with
 dat. consult for, consult the
 interests of.

dēserō, 3, -serui, -sertum, v. tr.
 desert.

idcirco, adv., for this reason.

quō, conj., in order that.

nōbilitās, -ātis, F., nobility.

discessus, -ūs, M., departure.

imprūdentia, -ae, F., thoughtless-
 ness.

labor, 3, lapsus, v. intr., slip,
 glide away, revolt.

fortūnae, -arum, F., pl., fortunes,
 interests.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



Caesar prepares to sail.

5. His rebus constitutis, Caesar ad portum Itium cum legionibus pervenit. Ibi cognoscit quadraginta naves, quae in Meldis factae erant, tempestate rejectas cursum tenere non potuisse atque eodem, unde erant profectae, revertisse; reliquas paratas ad navigandum atque omnibus rebus instructas invenit. / Eodem equitatus totius Galliae convenit numero millium quattuor, principesque ex omnibus civitatibus, ex quibus perpauca, quorum in se fidem perspexerat, relinquere in Gallia, reliquos obsidum loco secum ducere decreverat, quod, cum ipse abesset, motum Galliae verebatur. /

211282

Dumnorix gives trouble.

6. Erat una cum ceteris Dumnorix Haeduus, de quo ante ab nobis dictum est. Hunc secum habere in primis constituerat, quod eum cupidum rerum novarum, cupidum imperii, magni animi, magnae inter Gallos auctoritatis cognoverat. Accedebat huc, quod in concilio Haeduum Dumnorix dixerat, sibi a Caesare regnum civitatis deferri; quod dictum Haedui graviter ferebant, neque recusandi aut deprecandi causa legatos ad Caesarem mittere audebant. Id factum ex suis hospitibus Caesar cognoverat. / Ille omnibus primo precibus

rejiciō, 3, -jēci, -jectum, v. tr.,
throw back.

perpauci, -ae, -a, pl. adj., very
few.

locō, in the place of, as.

dēcernō, 3, -crēvi, -crētum, v. tr.,
decree, determine, decide.

absūm, -esse, -fui, v. irreg., am
absent.

mōtus, -ūs, M., rising.

rēs novae, F. pl., new things,
change, revolution.

accēdēbat huc quod, to this was
added the fact that.

dēferō, -ferre, -tuli, -latum, v. tr.,
report, offer.

dictum, -i, N., saying, statement.

recūsō, 1, v. tr., refuse, object.

dēprecor, 1, v. dep., protest.

audeō, 2, ausus sum, v. semi-dep.
dare.

hospes, -itis, M., guest, friend.

precēs, precum, pl. F., (see Vocab.)
prayer, request.

unā cum, along with.

in primis, among the first, especi-
ally.

petere contendit, ut in Gallia relinqueretur, partim quod *Implicis*
 insuetus navigandi mare timeret, partim quod religionibus *Ind. Dei*
 impedi sese diceret. Posteaquam id obstinate sibi negari
 vidit, omni spe impetrandi adempta, principes Galliae
 sollicitare, sevocare singulos, hortarique coepit, uti in *Purpura*
 continenti remanerent; metu territare, non sine causa fieri; *will or*
 ut Gallia omni nobilitate spoliaretur; id esse consilium *arins.*
 Caesaris, ut, quos in conspectu Galliae interficere vereretur,
 hos omnes in Britanniam traductos necaret; fidem reliquis
 interponere, jusjurandum poscere, ut, quod esse ex usu
 Galliae intellexissent, communi consilio administrarent.
 Haec a compluribus ad Caesarem deferebantur.

Death of Dumnorix.

7. Qua re cognita, Caesar, quod tantum civitati Haeduae
 dignitatis tribuebat, coercendum ~~atque~~ deterrendum, quibus-
 cumque rebus posset, Dumnorigem statuebat; quod longius
 ejus amentiam progredi videbat, prospiciendum ne quid sibi
 ac reipublicae nocere posset. Itaque dies circiter viginti

partim, adv., partly.

insuetus, -a, -um, adj. (governs
 gen.), unaccustomed, unused.

timeō, 2, ul, no sup., fear, am afraid.

rēligiō, -ōnis, F., religious feeling,
 religious scruple.

impediō, 4, v. tr., prevent.

obstinatē, adv., resolutely.

impetrō, 1, v. tr., obtain a request.

adimō, 3, -ēmi, -emptum, v. tr.,
 take away, remove.

sevocō, 1, v. tr., call aside.

singuli, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj.,
 one by one.

terrītō, 1, v. tr., terrify, alarm.

spoliō, 1, v. tr., despoil, rob.

necō, 1, v. tr., kill, murder.

fidem interponō, pledge one's
 word.

jūsjūrandum, jūrisjūrandi, N.,
 oath.

ex ūsū, in the interests of.

commūnis, -e, adj., common.

administrō, 1, v. tr., carry out.

tribuō, 3, -ui, -itum, v. tr., assign,
 give.

coerceō, 2, restrain, check.

āmentia, -ae, F., madness, folly.

prōspiciō, 3, -spexi, -spectum,
 v. tr., foresee, take care, take
 precautions.

noceō, 2, v. intr. (governs dat.),
 injure, harm.

quinque in eo loco commoratus, quod Corus ventus navigationem impediēbat, qui magnam partem omnis temporis in his locis flare consuevit, dabat operam ut in officio Dumnorigem contineret, nihilo tamen secius omnia ejus consilia cognosceret; tandem idoneam nactus tempestatem, milites equitesque conscendere in naves jubet. At, omnium impeditis animis, Dumnorix cum equitibus Haeduorum a castris, insciente Caesare, domum discedere coepit. Qua re nuntiata, Caesar, intermissa profectio, atque omnibus rebus postpositis, magnam partem equitatus ad eum insequendum mittit, retrahique imperat; si vim faciat, neque pareat, interfici jubet, nihil hunc se absente pro sano facturum arbitratus, qui praesentis imperium neglexisset. Ille enim, revocatus, resistere ac se manu defendere, suorumque fidem implorare coepit, saepe clamitans, liberum se liberaeque esse civitatis. Illi, ut erat imperatum, circumstant hominem atque interficiunt; at equites Haedui ad Caesarem omnes revertuntur.

*Intermissa
has vides*

Causal.

*Perf.
Pals.*

Caesar's second landing in Britain, 54 B.C.

8. His rebus gestis, Labieno in continente cum tribus legionibus et equitum millibus duobus relicto, ut portus

commoror, 1, v. dep., delay.

Corus, -i, M., north-west wind.

navigatio, -ōnis, F., sailing, navigation.

flō, 1, v. intr., blow.

operam dō ut, take pains to.

nihilō secius, none the less.

conscendō, 3, -di, -sum, v. tr. and intr., go on board.

insciens (gen. inscientis), adj., not knowing, ignorant.

intermittō, 3, -misi, -missum, v. tr., stop, delay.

profectio, -ōnis, F., departure.

insequor, 3, -secutus, v. dep., pursue, overtake.

retrahō, 3, -traxi, -tractum, v. tr., bring back.

sānus, -a, -um, adj., sane.

prō sanō, like a sane man.

praesens (gen. praesentis), adj., present.

neglegō, 3, -lexi, -lectum, v. tr., neglect, disregard.

clāmitō, 1, v. intr., shout often.

circumsistō, 3, -steti, no sup., v. tr., surround.

tueretur, et rem frumentariam provideret, quaeque in Gallia gererentur cognosceret, consiliumque pro tempore et pro re caperet, ipse cum quinque legionibus et pari numero equitum, quem in continenti reliquerat, ad solis occasum naves solvit; et leni Africo proventus, media circiter nocte vento intermisso, cursum non tenuit; et longius delatus aestu, orta luce, sub sinistra Britanniam relictam conspexit. Tum rursus aestus commutationem secutus, remis contendit, ut eam partem insulae caperet, qua optimum esse egressum superiore aestate cognoverat. Qua in re admodum fuit militum virtus laudanda, qui vectoriis gravibusque navigiis, non intermisso remigandi labore, longarum navium cursum adaequarunt. Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus navibus meridiano fore tempore, neque in eo loco hostis est visus: sed, ut postea Caesar ex captivis cognovit, cum magnae manus eo convenissent, multitudine navium perterritae, quae cum annotinis privatisque, quas sui quisque commodi fecerat, amplius octingentae uno erant visae tempore, a litore discesserant ac se in superiora loca abdiderant.

See. with in. Simplified notation.

tueor, 2, tuitus, v. dep., protect, defend.

rēs frūmentāria, F., corn supply.

pār (gen. paris), adj., equal.

lēnis, -e, adj., gentle, mild.

Āfricus, -i, M., south-west wind.

prōvehō, 3, -vexi, -vectum, v. tr., carry forward.

sinistra, -ae (sc. manus), F., left hand, left.

orior, oriri, ortus, v. dep., rise, arise.

rēmus, -i, M., oar.

quā (sc. parte), where.

ēgressus, -ūs, M., landing, landing place.

admodum, adv., very.

vectōrius, -a, -um, adj., adapted for carrying.

vectōrium nāvīgium, transport ship.

rēmigō, 1, v. intr., row.

adaequō, 1, v. tr., equal.

meridiānus, -a, -um, adj., mid-day.

manus, -ūs, F., hand, band.

annōtinus, -a, -um, adj., of last year.

privātus, -a, -um, adj., private.

commodum, -i, N., convenience, advantage.

amplius, adv., more (than).

octingenti, -ae, -a, num. adj., 800.

The Britons oppose his march inland.

9. Caesar, exposito exercitu, et loco castris idoneo capto, ubi ex captivis cognovit, quo in loco hostium copias conaedissent, cohortibus decem ad mare relictis et equitibus trecentis, qui praesidio navibus essent, de tertia vigilia ad hostes contendit eo minus veritus navibus, quod in litore molli atque aperto deligatas ad ancoram relinquebat, et praesidio navibusque Quintum Atrium praefecit. Ipse, noctu progressus millia passuum circiter duodecim, hostium copias conspicatus est. Illi, equitatu atque essedis ad flumen progressi, ex loco superiore nostros prohibere et proelium committere coeperunt. Repulsi ab equitatu, se in silvas abdiderunt, locum nacti egregie et natura et opere munitum, quem domestici baili, ut videbantur, causa jam ante praeparaverant: nam, crebris arboribus succisia, omnes introitus erant praecclusi. Ipsi ex silvis rari propugnabant, nostrosque intra munitiones ingredi prohibebant. At milites legionis septimae, testudine facta, et aggere ad munitiones adjecto, locum ceperunt eosque ex silvis expulerunt, paucis vulneribus acceptis. Sed eos fugientes

expōnō, 3, -posuī, -positum, v. tr.,
land, disembark.

considō, 3, -sēdī, -sessum, settle,
encamp.

vigilia, -ae, F., watch.

eō, adv., for this reason.

mollis, -e, adj., soft.

dēligō, 1, v. tr., bind.

conspicor, 1, v. dep., see, behold.

repellō, 3, -pūllī, -pulsum, v. tr.,
drive back, repulse.

ēgrediā, adv., admirably, excel-
lently.

domesticus, -a, -um, adj., domes-
tic, civil.

praeparō, 1, v. tr., prepare before-
hand.

crēber, -bra, -brum, adj., frequent,
numerous.

succidō, 3, -cidi, -cisum, v. tr.,
cut down.

introitus, -ūs, M., entrance.

praeccludō, 3, -clūsi, -clūsum, v.
tr., close, shut.

rārvus, -a, -um, adj., thin, few, in
small bodies.

prōpugnō, 1, v. intr., fight.

mūnitio, -ōnis, F., fortification.

ingredior, -gredi, -gressus, v.
dep., go into, enter.

testūdō, -inis, F., testudo (see
Vocab.)

adjiciō, 3, -jēci, -jectum, v. tr.,
throw up, throw against.

longius Caesar prosequi vetuit, et quod loci naturam ignorabat, et quod, magna parte diei consumpta, munitioni castrorum tempus relinqui volebat.

Bad news of the fleet.

10. Postridie ejus diei, mane, tripartito milites equitesque in expeditionem misit, ut eos, qui fugerant, persequerentur. His aliquantum itineris progressis, cum jam extremi essent in prospectu, equites a Quinto Atrio ad Caesarem venerunt, qui nuntiarent superiore nocte, maxima coorta tempestate, prope omnes naves afflictas atque in litore ejectas esse, quod neque ancorae funesque subsisterent, neque nautae gubernatoresque vim pati tempestatis possent: itaque ex eo concursu navium magnum esse incommodum acceptum.

*Indirect discourse
inb. clause*

Labiennus builds new ships. Cassivellaunus.

11. His rebus cognitis, Caesar legiones equitatumque revocari atque in itinere resistere jubet; ipse ad naves revertitur; eadem fere, quae ex nuntiis litterisque cognoverat,

vetō, 1, vetul, vetitum, v. tr.,
forbid.

ignorō, 1, v. tr., not to know, am
ignorant of.

ejiciō, 3, -jēci, -jectum, v. tr.,
throw out, cast.

fūnis, -is, M., rope, cable.

subsistō, 3, -stiti, no sup., v. tr.,
make a stand, hold out.

coram perspiciit, sic ut, amissis circiter quadraginta navibus, reliquae tamen refici posse magno negotio viderentur. Itaque ex legionibus fabros deligit, et ex continenti alios arcessi jubet; Labieno scribit, ut, quam plurimas posset, iis legionibus, quas sunt apud eum, naves instituat. Ipse, etsi res erat multae operae ac laboris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit, omnes naves subduci et cum castris una munitione conjungi. In his rebus circiter dies decem consumit, ne nocturnis quidem temporibus ad laborem militum intermissis. Subductis navibus, castrisque egregie munitis, eadem copias, quas ante, praesidio navibus reliquit, ipse eodem, unde redierat, proficiscitur. Eo cum venisset, majores jam undique in eum locum copias Britannorum convenerant, summa Imperii bellique administrandi communi consilio permissa Cassivellauno; cuius fines a maritimis civitatibus flumen dividit, quod appellatur Tamesis, a mari circiter millia passuum octoginta. Huic superiore tempore cum reliquis civitatibus continentia bella intercesserant; sed nostro adventu permoti Britanni hunc toti bello imperioque praefecerant.

coram, adv., face to face, before one's eyes.

perspiciō, 3, -spexi, -spectum, v. tr., see, perceive.

reficiō, 3, -feci, -fectum, v. tr., repair.

negōtium, -i, M., trouble.

faber, -bri, M., workman.

deligō, 3, -lēgi, -lectum, v. tr., choose, select.

arcessō, 3, -cessivi, -cessitum, v. tr., summon.

opera, -ae, F., work, service.

subducō, 3, -dūxi, -ductum, v. tr., draw up on shore, beach.

conjungō, 3, -junxi, -junctum, v. tr., join together.

nocturnus, -a, -um, adj., of the night.

ne . . . quidem, not even.

summa, -ae, F., whole; summa imperii, supreme command.

dividō, 3, -vixi, -visum, v. tr., divide, separate.

continens (gen. continentis), adj., continuous, incessant.

intercedō, 3, -cessi, -cessum, v. intr., intervene, occur.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of
human knowledge in
797,885 volumes

Instant access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

The island.

13. Insula natura triquetra, cujus unum latus est contra Galliam. Hujus lateris alter angulus, qui est ad Cantium, quo fere omnes ex Gallia naves appelluntur, ad orientem solem, inferior ad meridiem spectat. Hoc pertinet circiter millia passuum quingenta. Alterum vergit ad Hispaniam atque occidentem solem; qua ex parte est Hibernia, dimidio minor, ut existimatur, quam Britannia, sed pari spatio transmissus atque ex Gallia est in Britanniam. In hoc medio cursu est insula quae appellatur Mona; complures praeterea minores subjectae insulae existimantur; de quibus insulis nonnulli scripserunt dies continuos triginta sub bruma esse noctem.

Nos nihil de eo percontationibus reperiēbamus, nisi certis ex aqua mensuris breviores esse quam in continenti noctes videbamus. Hujus est longitudo lateris, ut fert illorum opinio, septingentorum millium. Tertium est contra septentriones; cui parti nulla est objecta terra, sed ejus angulus lateris maxime ad Germaniam spectat. Hoc millia passuum octingenta in longitudinem esse existimatur. Ita omnis insula est in circuitu vicies centum millium passuum.

triquetrus, -a, -um, adj., triangular.

angulus, -ī, M., angle.

appellō, 3, -pulī, -pulsum, v. tr., drive to, steer towards.

sol oriens, rising sun, east.

meridiēs, -ēī, M., mid-day, south.

pertineō, 2, -uī, -tentum, v. intr., extend.

occidens sol, setting sun, west.

dimidium, -ī, N., half.

transmissus, -ūs, M., passage.

praetereā, adv., besides.

subjectus, -a, -um, p. p. p., used as adj., lying near.

brūma, -ae, F. (= brevissima, sc. diēs), shortest day, winter solstice.

percontātiō, -ōnis, F., inquiry.

reperiō, 4, repperī, repertum, v. tr., find out.

mensūra, -ae, F., measurement.

septingentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., 700.

circuitus, -ūs, M., circumference.

viciēs, num. adv., twenty times.

touch

Dec. 21st

Place in which (Ages.)



inter se communes et maxime fratres cum fratribus parent-
esque cum liberis; sed si qui sunt ex his nati, eorum habentur
liberi, quo primum virgo quaeque deducta est. ⚡

More fighting, a surprise; death of a tribune.

15. Equites hostium essedariique acriter proelio cum
equitatu nostro in itinere confixerunt, tamen ut nostri
omnibus partibus superiores fuerint atque eos in silvas col-
lesque compulerint; sed compluribus interfectis, cupidius
insecuti, nonnullos ex suis amiserunt. At illi; intermissio
spatio, imprudentibus nostris atque occupatis in munitione

*the new
manner*

hūmānus, -a, -um, adj., civilized.
plērique, plēraeque, plēraque, pl.
adj., most, the majority.
serō, 3, sēvi, satum, v. tr., sow,
plant.
lac, lactis, N., milk.
carō, carnis, F., flesh.
pellis, -is, F., skin, hide.
vitrum, -i, N., wood.
caeruleus, -a, -um, adj., sky-blue,
blue.
horridus, -a, -um, adj., dreadful,
frightful.
aspectus, -ūs, M., aspect.
capillus, -i, M., hair.
promissus, -a, -um, adj., flowing,
long.

lābrum, -i, N., lip.
dēni, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj.,
ten by ten, ten apiece.
duodēni, -ae, -a, distrib. num.
adj., twelve by twelve, twelve
apiece.
dēducō, 3, -dūxi, -ductum, v. tr.,
lead away, marry.

confligō, 3, -fixi, -fictum, v. tr.,
strike, engage.
compello, 3, -puli, -pulsam, v. tr.,
drive.
cupidē, adv., eagerly.
nōnnulli, -ae, -a, pl. adj., some.
imprudens form imprudent

perruperunt seque inde incolumes receperunt. Eo die Quintus Laberius Durus tribunus militum interficitur. Illi, pluribus submissis cohortibus, repelluntur. /

British mode of fighting.

16. Toto hoc in genere pugnae, cum sub oculis omnium ac pro castris dimicaretur, intellectum est, nostros propter gravitatem armorum, quod neque insequi cedentes possent neque ab signis discedere auderent, minores aptos esse ad hujus generis hostem; equites autem magno cum periculo proelio dimicare, propterea quod illi etiam consulto plerumque cederent et, cum paulum ab legionibus nostros removissent ex essediis desilirent et pedibus dispari proelio contenderent. / Equestris autem proelii ratio et cedentibus et insequentibus ~~par~~ atque idem periculum inferebat. Accedebat huc, ut nunquam conferti, sed rari magnisque intervallis proeliarentur stationesque dispositas haberent, atque alios alii deinceps exciperent, integrique et recentes defatigatis succederent.

ab ordine lance. Dic.

subsidium, -i, N., support, reinforcement.

perexiguus, -a, -um, adj., very small.

consistō, 3, -stiti, -stitum, v. intr.; take one's stand.

audacter, adv., boldly (audacius; audacissimē).

perrumpō, 3, -rūpi, -ruptum, v. tr., break through.

dimicō, 1, v. intr., fight, struggle.

gravitas, -itatis, F., weight.

cādō, 3, cecidi, cecidum, v. intr., go, withdraw, retreat.

aptus, -a, -um, adj., fit, suited.

propterea, adv., for this reason; propterea quod, because.

consultō, adv., purposely.

desiliō, 4, -silui, -sultum, v. intr., leap down.

dispar (gen. disparis), unequal.

ratio, -onis, F., plan, method.

accedebat huc ut, to this was added the fact that.

deinceps; adv., in turn.

integer, -gra, -grum, adv., whole, fresh, vigorous.

defatigatus, -a, -um, adj., wearied.

The Britons repulsed.

17. Postero die procul a castris hostes in collibus constiterunt, rarique se ostendere, et lenius quam pridie nostros equites proelio lacesere coeperunt. Sed meridie, cum Caesar pabulandi causa tres legiones atque omnem equitatum cum Caio Trebonio legato misisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pabulatores advolaverunt, sic uti ab signis legionibusque non absisterent. Nostri, acriter in eos impetu facto, repulerunt, neque finem sequendi fecerunt, quoad subsidio confisi equites, cum post se legiones viderent, praecipites hostes egerunt; magnoque eorum numero interfecto, neque sui colligendi neque consistendi aut exessedis desiliendi facultatem dederunt. Ex hac fuga protinus, quae undique convenerant auxilia discesserunt; neque post id tempus unquam summis nobiscum copiis hostes contenderunt.

Caesar crosses the Thames.

18. Caesar, cognito consilio eorum, ad flumen Tamesim in fines Cassivellauni exercitum duxit; quod flumen uno omnino loco pedibus, atque hoc aegre, transiri potest. Eo cum venisset, animadvertit ad alteram fluminis ripam magnas esse copias hostium instructas. Ripa autem erat acutis sudibus praefixis munita, ejusdemque generis sub aqua defixae

ostendō, 3, -di, -sum (or -tum), v.
tr., show, display.

léniter, adv., gently.

pābulor, 1, v. dep., forage.

pābulātor, -ōris, M., forager.

advolō, 1, v. intr., fly at.

absistō, 3, -stiti, no sup., v. intr.,
keep away from.

quoad, conj., until.

confidō, 3, confisus sum, v. semi-
dep., trust.

colligō, 3, -lēgi, -lectum, v. tr.,
collect, rally.

prōtinus, adv., forthwith.

aegrē, adv., with difficulty.

acūtus, -a, -um, adj., sharp.

sūdes, -is, F., stake.

praefigō, 3, -fixi, -fixum, v. tr.,
fix or place in front of.

sudes flumine tegebantur. His rebus cognitis a captivis perfugisque, Caesar, praemisso equitatu, confestim legiones subsequi jussit. Sed ea celeritate atque eo impetu milites ierunt, cum capite solo ex aqua exstarent, ut hostes impetum legionum atque equitum sustinere non possent, ripasque dimitterent ac se fugae mandarent.

Tactics of Cassivellaunus.

19. Cassivellaunus, ut supra demonstravimus, omni deposita spe contentionis, dimissis amplioribus copiis, millibus circiter quattuor essedariorum relictis, itinera nostra servabat; paulumque ex via excedebat, locisque impeditis ac silvestribus sese occultabat, atque iis regionibus, quibus nos iter facturos cognoverat, pecora atque homines ex agris in silvas compellebat; et, cum equitatus noster liberius praedandi vastandique causa se in agros ejecerat, omnibus viis semitisque essedarios ex silvis emittebat, et magno cum periculo nostrorum equitum cum iis conflagabat, atque hoc metu latius vagari prohibebat. Relinquebatur, ut neque longius ab agmine legionum discedi Caesar pateretur, et tantum in agris vastandis incendiisque faciendis hostibus noceretur, quantum labore atque itinere legionarii milites efficere poterant.

tegō, 3, tēxi, tectum, v. tr., cover, protect.

perfuga, -ae, M., deserter.

exstō, -stāre, no pl., no sup., v. intr., stand out of.

mandō, 1, v. tr., consign.

contentiō, -ōnis, F., struggle.

servō, 1, v. tr., guard, watch.

silvester, -tris, -tre, adj., woody.

occultō, 1, v. tr., hide.

liberē, adv., freely.

sēmita, -ae, F., path, by-path.

vagor, 1, v. dep., wander.

patior, pati, passus, v. dep., allow.

incendium, -i, N., fire.

tantum ... quantum, as much ... as, as far ... as.

Result was that Caesar did not

The Trinobantes submit to Caesar.

20. Interim Trinobantes, prope firmissima earum regionum civitas, ex qua Mandubracius adulescens, Caesaris fidem secutus, ad eum in continentem Galliam venerat, 'cujus pater Immanuentius in ea civitate regnum obtinuerat interfectusque erat a Cassivellauno, ipse fuga mortem vitaverat, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt, pollicenturque sese ei dedituros atque imperata facturos; petunt, ut Mandubracium ab injuria Cassivellauni defendat, atque in civitatem mittat, qui praesit imperiumque obtineat. His Caesar imperat obsides quadraginta frumentumque exercitui, Mandubraciumque ad eos mittit. Illi imperata celeriter fecerunt, obsides ad numerum frumentumque miserunt. /

Introns

So do other tribes. A British "town."

21. Trinobantibus defensis atque ab omni militum injuria prohibitis, Cenimagni, Segontiaci, Ancalites, Bibroci, Cassi, legationibus missis, sese Caesari dedunt. Ab his cognoscit non longe ex eo loco oppidum Cassivellauni abesse silvis paludibusque munitum, quo satis magnus hominum pecorisque numerus convenerit. Oppidum autem Britanni vocant, cum silvas impeditas vallo atque fossa munierunt, quo incursionis hostium vitandae causa convenire consuerunt. Eo proficiscitur cum legionibus; locum reperit egregie natura atque opere munitum; tamen hunc duabus ex partibus oppugnare contendit. Hostes paulisper morati militum nostrorum impetum non tulerunt seseque alia ex parte oppidi ejecerunt. Magnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus, multique in fuga sunt comprehensi atque interfecti.

firmus, -a, -um, adj., strong.
 adulescens, -ntis, M., young man.
 vitō, 1, v. tr., avoid.
 defendō, 3, -dī, -sum, v. tr., defend, protect.
 praesum, -esse, -fui, v. irreg., am at the head of, am in command of.
 imperitum, -i, N., command.

légatiō, -ōnis, F., embassy.
 palūs, -ūdis, F., marsh, swamp.
 incursiō, -ōnis, F., attack, raid.
 paulisper, adv., for a short time.
 moror, 1, v. dep., delay.
 comprehendō, 3, -dī, -sum, v. tr., seize, arrest.

to the enemy

Four Kentish kings defeated. Cassivellaunus treats for peace.

22. Dum haec in his locis geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare supra demonstravimus, quibus regionibus quattuor reges praecerant, Cingetorix, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segovax, nuntios mittit atque his imperat, uti, coactis omnibus copiis, castra navalia de improvise adorianur atque oppugnent. Ii cum ad castra venissent, nostri, eruptione facta, multis eorum interfectis, capto etiam nobili duce Lugotorige, suos incolumes reduxerunt. Cassivellaunus, hoc proelio nuntiato, tot detrimentis acceptis, vastatis finibus, maxime etiam permotus defectione civitatum, legatos per Atrebatem Commium de deditioe ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar, cum constituisset hiemare in continenti propter repentinos Galliae motus, neque multum aestatis superesset, atque id facile extrahi posse intellegeret, obsides imperat, et, quid in annos singulos vectigalis populo Romano Britannia penderet, constituit; interdicit atque imperat Cassivellauno, ne Mandubracio neu Trinobantibus noceat.

nāvālis, -e, adj., naval.
 imprōvisus, -a, -um, adj., unforeseen; de imprōvisō, unexpectedly.
 adorior, -oriri, -ortus, v. dep., attack, assail.
 nōbilis, -e, adj., noble.
 incolumis, -e, adj., safe.
 dētrīmentum, -i, N., loss, damage.
 maximē, adv., especially.
 etiam, adv., also.
 dēfectiō, -ōnis, F., revolt.

repentīnus, -a, -um, adj., sudden, unexpected.
 supervisum, -esse, -fui, v. irreg., survive, remain.
 extrahō, 3, -traxi, -tractum, v. v. tr., draw out, spend.
 vectigal, -ālis, N., tax, tribute.
 pendō, 3, pependi; pensum, v. tr., weigh out, pay.
 interdīcō, 3, -dixi, -dictum, v. tr., forbid.

Reg. Blanche perforce



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



Sentence-Structure

If you compare a page of Caesar with a page of an English History, you will readily see that the sentences in Caesar are much longer and consequently fewer than in English. In English the narrative consists largely of independent statements, and the sentences contain one or more principal verbs with very few participial or subordinate constructions. In Latin the ideas are not expressed in this detached style, but one main idea is chosen and the subordinate ideas are grouped around it in participial and subordinate constructions. The English Style is called the Detached Style; the Latin Style is called the Periodic. In order to get a good idiomatic translation of a Latin sentence, it is often necessary to break it up into several detached sentences, and render Latin participles and subordinate verbs by principal verbs in English.

Exercises in Translation

A

His dimissis, et ventum et aestum uno tempore nactus secundum, dato signo, et sublatis ancoris, circiter millia passuum septem ab eo loco progressus, aperto ac plano litore naves constituit.
—Caesar IV, 23.

Observe in the above extract:—

- (a) There are five participles and one principal verb.
- (b) The different movements are stated in the order of their occurrence.
- (c) The one principal subject is maintained throughout.

Translation:—

The officers were then sent to their various posts; and now as wind and tide were both favorable at one and the same time, he gave the signal, weighed anchor, and after proceeding about seven miles from that point, moored his ships on an open and level shore.

B

Quibus rebus cognitis, principes Britanniae, qui post proelium factum ad ea, quae jusserat Caesar, facienda convenerant, inter se colloquuti, cum equites et naves et frumentum Romanis deesse

intelligerent et paucitatem militum ex castrorum exiguitate cognocerent,—quae hoc erant etiam angustiora, quod sine impedimentis Caesar legiones transportaverat,—optimum factu esse duxerunt, rebellione facta, frumento comenatuque nostros prohibere et rem in hiemem producere, quod, his superatis aut reditu interclusis, neminem postea belli inferendi causâ in Britanniam transitarum confidebant.—*Caesar IV, 30.*

Observe :—

- (a) The position of *quibus rebus cognitis* as the introductory words.
- (b) The position of *principes Britanniae* as the subject, followed by the *qui* clause connected with it, also *colloquuti* describing the mode of operation.
- (c) The *cum* clauses, giving the reasons for the action, placed before the principal verb.
- (d) *duxerunt*, the sole principal verb.

Translation :—

On learning these facts, the chiefs of Britain who after the battle had assembled to carry out Caesar's orders, held a conference. They perceived that the Romans lacked cavalry, ships and grain. They also ascertained the small number of our soldiers from the smallness of the camp. This was even smaller for this reason because Caesar had transported the legions without baggage. (Accordingly) they concluded the best thing to do was to renew the war, keep our men from (procuring) grain and supplies and prolong the campaign into winter, because they were sure that if these were overcome or cut off from return, no one would (ever) after cross over into Britain for the purpose of carrying on war.

Consistency of Latin Style

Examine :—

(a) *Caesar, etsi nondum consilia eorum cognoverat, tamen legiones in acie pro castris constituit.*

Although *Caesar* was not yet aware of their plans, nevertheless he posted his legions in line of battle before the camp.

(b) *Barbari, consilio Romanorum cognito, nostros navibus egredi prohibebant.*

When the plan of the Romans became known to the barbarians, they tried to prevent our men from landing.

CONSISTENCY OF LATIN STYLE

(c) *Qua re impetrata, arma tradere jussi, faciunt.*

This request was granted; and on being ordered to hand over their arms they do so.

(d) *Hunc illi e navi egressum, cum ad eos imperatoris mandata perferret, in vincula conjecerant.*

When he had landed from the ship and was delivering to them the orders of his commander, they had thrown him into chains.

These sentences illustrate the compactness, brevity and consistency of Latin style as compared with the English.

Latin as far as possible throughout the period or sentence—

- (a) Makes the real subject the grammatical subject of the principal verb;
- (b) Avoids change of subject;
- (c) Places the subject at or near the beginning, thereby giving emphasis and prominence to it;
- (d) Keeps a substantive in the same case.

NOTES

BOOK IV

Chapter 20

exigua parte—religua: abl. abs., equivalent to a concessive clause introduced by *etiam*, co-ordinate with the next clause: "*though but little of the summer remained, and in this district the winters set in early.*"

Note that *etiam* occurs in Caesar with the pres., impl., and plupl. indic.; never with the subj.

ad septentriones vergit: Caesar means that the rivers of Gaul outside the Provincia, i.e., in the part occupied by the Aquitani, Celtes and Belgae, have a northerly course.

septentriones: properly the seven stars which form the constellation of the Great Bear, from *septem*, seven, and *-trio* = *strio*, star; *op. stella* = *sterula*; German *Stern*, English *star*.

Britanniam: probably from the Celtic, *brit* or *brithi*, painted, from the custom of the inhabitants staining their bodies with woad (*B. V*, 14). The name Albion given to it by Aristotle (*De Mundo*, 3) is perhaps from Celtic *alp*, *alb*, high or white; *cp. Alpin*, Albany (an old name for Scotland), Latin *albus*, Alps.

quod—intellegebat: *cp. B. III*, 9, where he mentions the fact that the Nannetes and the Veneti sent for aid to Britain to carry on their war against the Romans. Dion Cassius says that Caesar's motive in crossing to Britain was simply this, to be the first Roman who visited the island. Suetonius attributes the expedition to avarice, mentioning the rich pearl fisheries as the inducement.

bellis Gallicis: "*in the wars against the Gauls.*" Either (1) abl. of Time When, or (2) Time 'within which,' *H. L.*, 116, 3; *R. C.*, 159, or (3) Local abl. with *in* omitted, *H. L.*, 119, 5.

subministrata sc. esse: "*had been secretly supplied.*" Note the force of *sub* in composition.

si—deficeret: "*even though the time of the year should be insufficient for carrying on a regular campaign*"; subj. in a subordinate clause in *Oratio Obliqua*, *H. L.*, 269, 8; *R. C.*, 408 (a). Caesar started on his first expedition to Britain near the end of August (see note on Chapter 23).

magno sibi usui fore (= *faturum esse*): "it would be of great advantage to him": *usui*, dat. of Purpose, H. L., 228, 2; R. C., 431. The clauses **si—adisset—perspexisset—cognovisset** are subjects of *fore*; the plupl. subj. represents the fut. pl. indic. In *Oratio Recta*, **magno mihi usui erit, si adiero—perspexere—cognovero**, H. L., 209, 3; R. C., 406 (a).
loca, portus, aditus: note the Anyndeton.

quae—incognita: this statement is not correct. Caesar himself says (*B. III*, 8): **naves habent Veneti plurimas, quibus in Britanniam navigare consuerunt**.

neque enim—quisquam: **neque enim** implies an ellipsis, "and (we can readily imagine this) for nobody goes there without good reason."
—temere, at random, rashly, opposed to **consulta**.

mercatores: may be either Greeks from Massilia (now *Marseilles*) or Romans from Provincia (now *Provence*) in Southern Gaul, who followed in the wake of the army to purchase booty and sell provisions.

Gallias: the divisions of Gaul—Belgica, Celtica, Aquitania.

neque: join with **reperire poterat**.

esset—incolerent—haberent—uterentur—essent: subj. in Indirect Question after **reperire**, H. L., 200, 4; R. C., 406 (b).

Note that **poterat** implies repeated action; **potuit** would have meant that he called the traders on a single occasion.

Chapter 21

ad haec cognoscenda: join with **praemittit**.

praequam periculum faceret: "before running the risk," "before making the attempt." Note that the subj. mood expresses intention on the part of Caesar; H. L., 280, 6; R. C., 387, 2 (b). Observe the meaning of **periculum**, "trial"; cp. *experior*, *πειράομαι* *πειρα*.

C. Volusenum; his full name was **Caius Volusenus Quadratus**. He held the office of *tribunus militum* and was employed by Caesar on several occasions. He aided in putting down Commius, king of the *Atrebates*, and as *tribunus plebis* in 43 B.C. supported *Marco Antony*. In *B. III*, 5, Caesar speaks of him in the highest terms in connection with the battle of the *Nervii*—**vir et magni consilii et virtutis**; *Commius* is also mentioned, *B. IV*, 27; *V*, 22; *VI*, 6; *VII*, 76, 79.

navi longa: ships of war—**naves longae**—were long and narrow, fitted for swift sailing; ships of burden—**naves onerariae**—were bulky, with round bottoms, fitted for carrying as large a cargo as possible.

mandat: "As charges"; **mando** implies confidence in the person intrusted with a commission.

Morinos: The Morini inhabited the sea coast of Gallia Belgica. Their name is from the Celtic *mor*, "sea"; cp. *Armorica*. They occupied the district from the *Scaldia* (now *Scheldt*) on the east to the *Samara* (now *Somme*) on the west. Their chief town was *Gesoriacum*, afterwards *Bouonia*, whence the modern *Boulogne*.

The *brevissimus trajectus* was, of course, the Straits of Dover, which is 23 miles in width between Calais and Dover; see note B. IV, 23.

Veneticum bellum: this war was carried on in 53 B.C., in consequence of the revolt of the Veneti and other states of north-western Gaul. Owing to the difficulty of getting at them by land, Caesar attacked them by sea and defeated them (B. III, 8-15) in the bay of *Quiberon*. Their chief town was *Vindana* (now *St. Orient*).

ejus = *Caesaria*.

per mercatores: H. L., 292, 5 (b).

perlato: "reported."

qui polliceantur: "to promise"; *qui Final*, H. L., 232, 2; B. C., 388.

dare: for *se daturus esse*. The *pres. infin.* after verbs expressing *hope, promise, undertakes* is an irregularity in good prose. The comic poets Terence and Plautus, sometimes use the English idiom. The *pres. infin.* may convey the idea that the promise will be at once fulfilled.

quibus auditis: (1) *abl. abs.*; or (2) possibly *dative* after *pollicitus*; "making kind promises to them after they were heard."

ut—permaneret: "to adhere to that resolution"; *Substantive Clause of Purpose*, H. L., 240, 2; B. C., 424 (a).

Atrebatibus superatis: the *Atrebates*, a people of Gallia Belgica, occupied what was once called *Artois* (probably a corruption of the name, but now called *Pas-de-Calais*). Others say that *Arras* (Flemish *Antrecht*) is a corrupt form of the word.

They were defeated by Caesar at the river *Sabis* (now *Sambre*) in 57 B.C. (B. II, 23). A portion of them, after this defeat, crossed over to Britain and settled in the valley of the *Thames*, probably in *Berkshire*. The fact that *Comminus* was king of the *Atrebates* on the continent may have influenced Caesar in sending him to treat with his countrymen in Britain.

magni—habebatur: "was considered of great value"; *magni, gen. of Value*, H. L., 290, 4.

huic = Commio.

imperat—civitates: construe *imperat* (ut) *adest* *civitates* *quas* *possit*, "he orders him to visit (all) the states he can"; *adest*, Substantive Clause of Purpose, H. L., 240, 2; R. C., 424; *possit*, subj. in *Oratio Obliqua*, H. L., 265, 2; R. C., 408 (b). Primary Sequence, H. L., 198, 4, 5; R. C., 387. The *ut* is sometimes omitted with the verbs of 'command': *B. III, 3, huic mandat, Remos reliquosque Belgas adest.*

eo: "thither" = in *Britanniam*.

ut—fidem sequantur: "to be loyal to," literally, "to accept the protection of."

seque: construe *imperatque huic ut nuntiet se (Caesarem) celeriter esse venturum.*

perspectis regionibus: "after ascertaining the character of the country"; so also *cognoscere regiones*, *B. III, 7.*

quantum potuit: "as far as his opportunity allowed him," literally, "as much (of) opportunity as could be afforded him."—*facultatis*, Partitive gen., H. L., 287, 4; R. C., 174.

qui—auderet: "inasmuch as he did not dare." Causal rel. and subj., H. L., 232, 4.

navi egredi: Caesar uses both *navi egredi* and *ex navi egredi*.

perspexisset: subj. in Indirect Question after Historic Present.—*quae*, acc. neut. pl. of *quis*, *quae*, *quid*.

Chapter 22

dum—moratur: *dum*, meaning 'while,' always takes the indicative in Caesar, except in *B. VII; 82.*

qui—excusarent—pollicerentur: "to excuse themselves—and to promise"; *qui* Final, H. L., 232, 2; R. C., 388.

temporis: Descriptive Gen., H. L., 288, 5. This refers to the events mentioned in *B. III, 28.* After the rest of Northern Gaul had submitted to Caesar, the Menapii and Morini suddenly attacked the Romans.

homines barbari: "as barbarous people," "being (as they were) barbarians."

nostrae consuetudinis: he refers to the mercy shown by the Romans to those who submitted to their sway.

populo. dat.: the construction of *bellum facere populo Romano* is formed on the analogy of *bellum inferre populo Romano*, H. L., 229, 4.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of
human knowledge in
797,885 volumes

Instant access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

Sabino et—Cottae: both highly esteemed legati of Caesar. They both fell in the ambushade planned by Ambiorix, king of the Eburones, B. V, 37.

Menapii: a people of Gallia Belgica, who inhabited both sides of the Rhine. Their chief town was Castellum Menapiorum (now *Kessel*).

Chapter 23

his constitutis rebus: express this in various ways; H. L., 204, 6: R. O., 204.

tertia vigilia: the time between sunset and sunrise was divided into four watches, each of which was about three hours long. Caesar set out with the infantry for Britain at midnight, August 26th, from Port Itius which is generally supposed to be *Boulogne* at the estuary of the *Somme*.

solvit: "he set sail": we find *solvere* or *solvere naves*, "to set sail": for the former see also B. IV, 28; for the latter B. IV, 36: V, 8.

alteriorem portum: further north than *Boulogne*: cp. IV, 28, where it is called *portus superior*. The cavalry were detained wind-bound at *Ambleteuse*, eight miles north of *Boulogne*.

naves conscendere: we also find in *naves conscendere*, "to embark." The cavalry did not start till three days afterwards, i.e., August 30th.

a quibus—administratum: "as his orders were carried out somewhat slowly by them."

ipse: notice that this pronoun when used alone generally refers to Caesar.

hora—quarta: as sunrise at this time of the year would be about 5 a.m. and sunset about 7 p.m., and an hour would be 1 hour and 10 minutes of our time, Caesar would arrive in Britain about 10 a.m.

expositas: here = *instructas*, "drawn up."

haec: "the following." **natura**: "the character."

adeo: join with *angustis*, "so precipitous." This statement applies to *Dover Cliffs*.

in litus: "upon the beach" = "to the water's edge"; cp. Celsus (Dig. 50, 16, 96), *litus est quousque maximus fluctus a mari pervenit*. Distinguish *litus*, the part of the shore washed by the water; *ripa*, the bank of a river; *ora*, the land on the shore.

ad egrediendam: sc. *ex navibus*, "for disembarking"; see note B. IV, 21.

nequaquam idoneum : "by no means suitable," "altogether unsuited."

dum—convenirent : for subj., see H. L., 259, 7 : R. O., 408 (a).

in ancoris expectavit : "waited at anchor."

legatis—convocatis : as the *imperator*, *tribuni militum*, and first centurions, *primipili*, formed the council of war, Caesar may mean that this was held.

quae—cognosset, quae—vellet : subj. in Indirect Question, H. L., 200, 3 : R. O., 408 (b).

monuitque—administrarentur : the first and second *ut* = 'as' ; the third *ut* is closely connected with *quae* = *cum* *ea* or *quippe quae*, "inasmuch as these," so that *ut* connecting *monuit* with *administrarentur* is omitted : "and warned them that all his orders should be carried out at a nod and at the right moment, as the method of military tactics (and) especially as naval tactics demanded, inasmuch as these involved rapid and uncertain movements." For the omission of *ut* after *monuit*, see note on *imperat—adant*, B. IV, 21.—**postularent** is subj. in Virtual Oratio Obliqua after *monuit*.—**haberent** is Causal subj., H. L., 252, 4 : R. O., 397.

sublatis ancoris : "having weighed anchor."

septem—progressus : Caesar may have gone either N.E. or S.W. of Dover. The former course would land him between Deal and Walmer Castle; the latter at Hythe or Lympne.

Chapter 24

at : generally denotes a transition in the narrative.

praemisso—essedariis : *praemisso* agrees with *equitatu*, the nearest word, though it applies also to *essedariis*.—The word *essedum* or *esseda* is said to be from the Celtic *ess*, 'a chariot.' The *essedarii* included the *aurigae*, 'drivers' (B. IV, 33), who were the nobles, and the *clientes*, 'retainers,' who were the fighting men ; cp. Tacitus (Ag. 12) : *auriga honestior ; clientes propugnans*. This was the reverse of the Homeric custom, where the driver was a mere attendant, and the warrior was the important man. In each chariot there were usually six warriors and the driver.

quo—genere : "a kind of fighting force which." This statement does not harmonize with that of Tacitus (Ag. 12) : *in pedite robur ; quaedam nationes et curru proeliantur*.

conseruerunt = conserverunt.

reliquis copiis = cum reliquis copiis : Caesar and Livy often omit preposition with abl. of Accompaniment ; H. L., 203, 3, (b).

egredi prohibebant : note that prohibeo takes acc. with infin.

militibus—desiliendum (erat) : “the soldiers had to leap down.”—**militibus** ; dat. of Agent, H. L., 187, 3 ; 188, 4, (b) ; R. C., 354.

illi : this pronoun is regularly used to represent “the enemy.”

“The soldiers moreover, ignorant of the locality, with their hands encumbered and burdened with the great and heavy weight of armor had at one and the same time to leap down from the ships, and get a firm footing amid the waves, and fight with the enemy, whereas they either from dry ground or after advancing a short distance into the water, with all their limbs unencumbered, and on ground quite familiar to them, kept boldly hurling their darts, and spurring on their horses trained (to such warfare.)” For the abl. abs. see H. L., 159, 4, (h) ; R. C., 308-5.

hujus—imperiti : “wholly unskilled in this kind of fighting.”

uti ; utebantur : “employ,” “display.”

Chapter 26

et—et : “both . . . and.”

specie : “appearance” embracing shape, size, color.

insuatiore : “somewhat unfamiliar” : for force of comparative see H. L., 88, 6.

motus—expeditior : “movement in actual service less difficult.” The **naves onerariae** were unwieldy compared with the **naves longae**, as the former were broader and heavier.

naves longas : join with **jussit removeri—incitari—constitui**.

remis incitari : “to be rowed rapidly forward.” **ad latus apertum** : “on the exposed flank,” i. e., the ‘right.’ Their left was protected by their shields.

fundis—tormentis : the slingers (**funditores**) and bowmen (**sagittarii**) belonged to the light-armed infantry (**velites**), see p. 14 : for **tormenta**, see p. 15.

propelli ac summoveari : “to be driven off and dislodged.”

quae res : “this movement.”

usui nostris : for the two datives see H. L., 223, 2 ; R. C., 430.

paulum modo : “a short distance only,” “just a little” ; R. C., 430.

atque: rarely found at the beginning of a new sentence, marking a contrast between what precedes and what follows: "and then."

nostris—cunctantibus: "while our men were wavering": abl. abs., H. L., 160 (c); R. C., 303-5.

qui—aquilam ferebat=aquilifer: see p. 17.

decimae legionis: Caesar's favorite legion: B. I, 40; *Huic legioni Caesar et indulserat praecipue et propter virtutem confidebat maxime.* The legions were numbered according to the order of enlistment.

contestatus deos: "appealing to the gods." The Romans seldom entered upon any important undertaking without an appropriate prayer to the deity or deities likely to aid them.

ea res: "this undertaking," "this action."

legioni: dat. of Indirect Object, H. L., 284, 1; R. C., 39.

nisi—vultis: to lose the standard was looked upon as most disgraceful, especially to the standard-bearer, since this would be a violation of the military oath (*sacramentum*) which bound the soldier "not to desert the standard through a desire to escape or through fear, nor to leave the ranks." To arouse the soldiers, the standard was sometimes thrown into the midst of the enemy.

ego certe officium praestitero: "I, at least, shall have done my duty." The fut. pf. is used because the eagle-bearer looks on his duty as having been completed by the act.

aquilam ferre: = "to advance."

inter se: "each other," "one another." Latin has no reciprocal pronoun corresponding to the Greek ἀλλήλων.

dedecus: i. e., the loss of the eagle.

has—conspexissent: "likewise when those on board the nearest ships had observed these"; with *ex proximis navibus*, cp. *ex equo*. (*equis*) *pugnare*, "to fight on horseback."

Chapter 26

pugnatum est: H. L., 155, 5.

acriter: note the emphatic position.

nostris: join with *perturbabatur*.

Note throughout the chapter the frequent use of the impl. to express repeated or continuous action.

atque alius alia ex navi : quod is still understood after atque : "and further because one from one ship and another from another."

quibuscumque—occurrerat—aggregabat : "kept joining themselves to whatever standards they met." The verbs are sing., agreeing with alius.—For the tenses expressing repeated action in the past, see H. L., 263, 8.—signis : dat. with a compound of ob (oc), H. L., 229, 4.

ubi—conspexerat : "whenever they saw"; op. occurerat above.

ex litore : op. ex arido (B. IV, 24).

singulares : "in scattered bodies."

plures : "a large number."

alii—conficiebant : "others on the exposed flank (right side) kept hurting their darts on the massed forces (of the Romans)."

ab latere aperto : see note on ad litus apertum (B. IV, 25).—For the force of ab ; op. a fronte, 'in front' ; ab oriente sole, 'on the east.'

speculatoria navigia : "spy boats" of light construction used for scouting purposes, and hence quick-sailing craft.

quos conspexerat : "(all) whom he saw in distress"; for tense see occurerat above.

suīs—consecutis : "after all their comrades joined them."

neque—potuerunt : "but they were not able to pursue (the enemy) any great distance."

longius : for force of comparative see H. L., 88, 6.

quod—potuerunt : they were wind-bound at Ambliatanae.

ad : "in accordance with."

Cassari : for dat., see H. L., 229, 4 ; 208, 8 ; B. C., 28. "This was the only break in Caesar's habitual good fortune."

Chapter 27

daturus : the full form would be se daturus esse.

imperasset : = imperavisset ; Oratio Obliqua representing fut. pl. indic. in Oratio Recta, H. L., 269, 8.

supra demonstraveram : B. IV, 21. The perf. would be more usual.

praemissum : sc. esse.

cum—deferret : "though he was delivering to them the orders of his commander in the character of an ambassador (or spokesman)."—cum Narrative, H. L., 204, 4 ; or Concessive, 255, Note ; B. C., 287.

ut (sibi) ignosceretur : "that it should be pardoned to them" = "to be pardoned"; subj. in Substantive Clause of Purpose, H. L., 240, 2; R. C., 424.—For impersonal use, see H. L., 178, 2.

quod bellum intulissent : "of their having commenced hostilities"; Virtual O.O., H. L., 253, 6; R. C., 408 (a).

cum—petissent : "though they had of their own accord sent ambassadors to the continent and had sought peace from him."

ignoscere : sc. se.

arcessitam : "after they had been summoned."

remigrare in agros : "to return to their own lands." **agri** may mean either 'districts' or 'farm lands.'

Chapter 28

his rebus : either "on these terms" or "by these means."

post diem quartum quam : **post** is regarded as a prep. governing **diem**; but really goes with **quam**, forming **postquam**. The simpler but less usual form would be **die quarto postquam**. Since, in reckoning time, the Romans counted inclusively, this in English would be "three days after."

est ventum : used impersonally; so. **Caesari = Caesar venit** : "after Caesar's arrival in Britain."

supra demonstratum est : see previous note; "mention has been made above."

superiore portu : *Ambletouse*, north of *Boulogne*, called *portus ulterior* in *B. IV*, 23.

soluerunt : "set sail," "started," applied absolutely to *naves* after the analogy of *solvere naves* used transitively; see *B. IV*, 23.

sed aliae—referrentur; **aliae—deficerentur** : the *ut* Consecutive is still understood with these clauses, H. L., 203, 1, 2; R. C., 371.

propius solis occasum : "further west," literally "nearer the sunset."

Caesar is said to have been the first to use **propius** as a preposition.

magno sui cum periculo : "at great danger to themselves"; **sui** is Objective Gen., H. L., 287, 3; R. C., 429 (d).

quae—petierunt : "These, nevertheless, cast anchor, but, since they were being filled by the waves, of necessity they put out to sea in the face of night and made for the continent."

tamen: means in spite of the storm raging. Evidently the anchors prevented the boats from riding the waves and so they were in danger of being swamped.

adversa nocte: some render "*though the night was stormy*" or "*in a foul night*"; abl. abs.; though possibly abl. of Time When.

Chapter 29

eadem nocte: the night of 20th Aug., 55 B.C.

maritimos aestus: spring tides occur a day after full moon, and new moon. The spring tides at *Dover* are said to rise to the height of 19 feet; at *Boulogne*, to the height of 25 feet.

incoegnitum: in the Mediterranean there are no tides or very slight ones at certain points. One would have supposed that Caesar's soldiers would have observed the phenomena of tides in the war against the Veneti fought the previous year (*B. III, 12*). The influence of the moon on tides was known to Cicero (*De Divia. 2, 14*): *quid de fretis aut de maritimis aestibus dicam? quorum accessus et recessus (flow and ebb) lunae motu gubernantur.* This work was not published till 44 B.C., eleven years after Caesar's first expedition to Britain.

uno tempore: "*at one and the same time.*"

exercitum—curaverat: "*had had his army brought over.*" For this use of the Gerundive, see *H. L., 187, 9; R. C., 449.*

subdlexerat: *naves subducere*, "*to haul vessels on shore,*" "*to beach,*" opposed to *naves deducere*, "*to launch vessels.*"

et—adflictabat: "*and the storm kept dashing the transports about which were riding at anchor.*"—*onerarias*, so. *naves*. Note the force of the imperfect frequentative *adflictabat*.

aut—auxiliandi: "*either of managing (their own ships) or of lending aid (to others).*"

compluribus—inutiles: "*since several vessels were wrecked and since the rest were unfit for sailing owing to the loss of their cables, anchors, and the rest of their tackling.*" The first abl. abs. is Causal, and coordinate with the Causal cum clause. The second abl. abs. is also Causal.

id quod necesse erat accidere: "*as was unavoidable.*"

quibus—possent: *quibus*: abl. of Means and Final Relative, hence *possent*. *H. L., 232, 2; R. C., 383.*



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



cum—administraretur: "since the work was carried on with the greatest zeal on the part of the soldiers"; **cum Causal**, H. L., 282, 2.

duodecim navibus amissis: "though twelve ships were lost"; **concessive abl. aba.**

reliquis effecit: "he so arranged matters that the voyage could be conveniently made with the rest"; literally "he brought it to pass that it could be sailed."—**reliquis**, **abl. of Means or Instrument**.—Note with a **pass. infn. navigari** that **passet** is impersonal.

Chapter 32

dum geruntur: see note Chapter 22.

ex consuetudine: "in accordance with custom," "as was the custom."

The foraging was generally done by the 7th legion: the severe fighting, by the 10th.

frumentatum: **supine**: H. L., 180, 2; R. C., 470 (n).

neque ulla—interposita: "and though no suspicion of war up to the present had arisen"; **Concessive abl. aba.**—Note that Latin requires **neque ullus**, not **et nullus** for "and no."

cum pars hominum: "since some of the people," i.e., the Britons.

in agris: "on their lands."

pars—venitaret: "(while) others were coming and going to the camp (i.e., of the Romans)."

in statione: "on sentry duty." For the gates of a Roman camp see page 18. The sentries at the gates of the camp were called **stationes**; **excubiae** were day or night guards; **vigiliae** were night guards only; **custodiae**, guards of the fortifications. The night guard was inspected every three hours by **circulares**, who were changed at the end of every watch.

quam consuetudo ferret: "than custom admitted of," "than usual." The subj. is either (1) in a subordinate clause in **Oratio Obliqua**, or (2) the clause is **Consecutive**.

in ea parte—in quam partem: the repetition of the antecedent in the relative clause is frequent in Caesar. In English omit the antecedent in the relative clause.

id quod erat: "the actual state of affairs," "what really was the fact."

aliquid consili: "some new design had been formed"; **Part. Gen.**, H. L., 287, 4: the **inf. clause** is in apposition to **id**: R. C., 174 (a).

cohortes: join this with **juvit**.

in stationibus: "on the outpost," "on guard"; cp. **in statione**, page 74.

in stationem succedere: "to take their place on guard";

Note the idea of motion conveyed by **succedere**, and hence the accus. **armari**=**se armare**: the passive in Latin is sometimes used with a reflexive meaning corresponding to the Greek middle.

confestim: "immediately"; note the emphatic position of the adverb; from the same root as **festino**, "hasten."

segre sustinere eo. hostes, "with difficulty were keeping the enemy in check."

conferta legione: the abl. abs. is equivalent to a Causal clause giving the reason why the Romans were exposed to a cross-fire: "since the legion was massed together."

conjici: so. in **eam**. Caesar might have written in **confertam legionem—conjici**.

nam quod: "for since." Join **nam** with **delituerant**, and **quod** with **erat**.

"for, because, the corn having been reaped from all other parts, one part was left, etc." = "for, since the corn had been reaped from all parts but one, the enemy, suspecting that our men would come there, had concealed themselves in the night-time in the woods."

disperso—occupatos: so. **nostros**: "then having attacked our men while scattered, with their arms laid down (piled up), and while engaged in reaping."

incertis—ordinibus: Causal abl. abs.: "since their ranks were in confusion." The Romans were scattered and could not take their places in the line.

circumdedeant: so. **nostros**.

Chapter 38

genae—pugnae: "the following is their mode of fighting on war chariots."—**pugnae**=**pugnandi**. With **ex ecedis pugna**, cp. **ex equis pugnare**, "to fight on horseback."

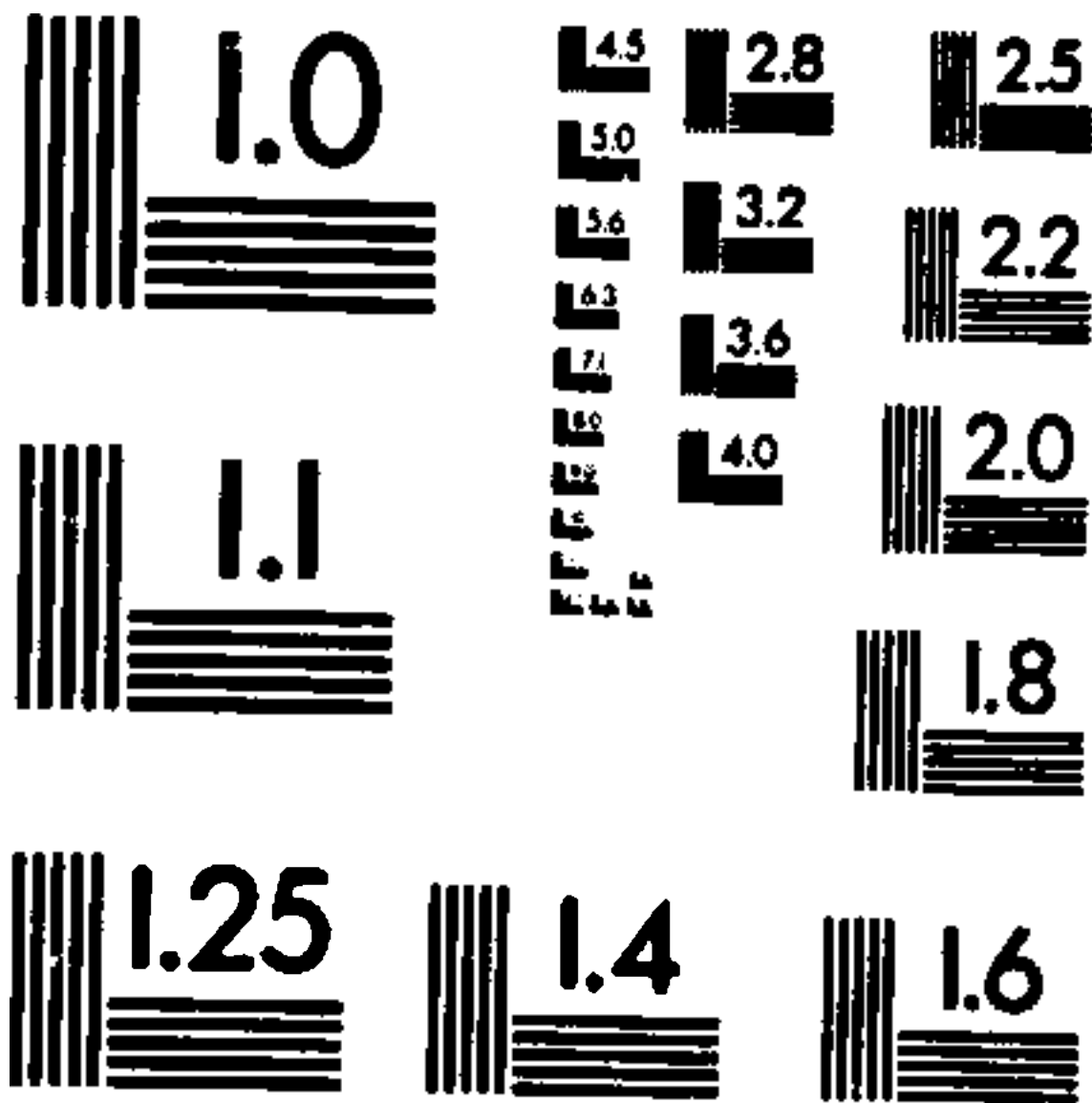
per omnes partes, i.e., up and down between the two armies.

ipso terrere equorum: "by the sheer terror caused by their horses"; Subjective Gen., H. L., 287, 2: R. C., 429 (c).



MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



APPLIED IMAGE Inc

1653 East Main Street
Rochester, New York 14609 USA
(716) 482 - 0300 - Phone
(716) 288 - 5989 - Fax

cum—insinuaverunt : “*when once they work their way.*”

For **cum** with **pf. indic.** in the subordinate clause expressing a repeated act in the present see H. L., 263, 9.—The British charioteers drove into the spaces between the cavalry squadrons of their own troops. The warriors (**essedarii**) would then dismount, and the drivers (**aurigae**) retreat to the rear.

desiliunt : **sc. essedarii**, i.e., “*the warriors*” : see note on **praemisso—essedariis**, B. IV, 24.

praestant : “*display,*” “*combine.*”

tantum—efficiunt : “*they become so expert by daily experience and practise.*”

in—loco : “*when the ground is sloping and even steep.*” This construction where **in** with the **abl.** is used with the same force as an **abl. abs.** is sometimes called the **Prepositional abl. abs.** This arises from the want of a present participle of the verb **sum**.

brevi : **sc. tempore** : “*in a moment.*”

per teponem : “*along the pole.*”

Chapter 34

quibus rebus : either (1) **abl. of Cause** “*owing to these tactics,*” “*wherefore*” ; or (2) **abl. abs.** “*when matters were in this state,*” “*under these circumstances*” ; or (removing the commas and considering **nostris dat.** instead of **abl. abs.**) (3) **abl. of Means** with **perturbatis** “*to our men confused by these tactics from the fact that the mode of fighting was new.*”

namque = Greek *καὶ γάρ* : “*and (this was evident) for*” ; **namque** in Caesar and Cicero is usually used before a vowel and is always the first word of its clause.

quo—facto : “*though this was done*” ; **Concessive abl. abs.**

ad lacesendum : “*for skirmishing with the enemy.*”

alienum : “*unfavorable*” : **alienus** is rarely applied to things and when it is, it is opposed to **suus** or **opportunus** ; **op. locus suus**, “*ground of his own choosing,*” hence “*favorable*” ; **tempus suum**, “*time chosen by himself.*” **suo loco** = **in suo loco** ; the prep. **in** is often omitted with **locus**.

quae—continerent : **subj. of Result** = **tantae ut continerent** : “*so great that they kept our men inside the camp.*”—**castris** : see **suo loco**, previous note.

praedicaverunt: "*they openly boasted*"; distinguish in meaning **praedico** and **praedico**.

quanta facultas—daretur: "*what a fine opportunity was being offered them*"; subj. in Indirect Question, H. L., 200: R. C., 362.

praedae faciendae: "*of securing booty*"; **facere praedam** does not occur elsewhere in Caesar.

in perpetuum: "*forever.*"

sui liberandi: with the genitives **mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri**, the Gerund or Gerundive form in **-di** is used, without reference to the gender or number of the pronoun, H. L., 187, 8.

si expulissent: "*if they succeed in driving out*"; subj. in Virtual O.O. representing the fut. pl. indic.—**si expuleritis**—in O.R., H. L., 269, 8: R. C., 408.

his rebus: "*by these representations.*"

Chapter 35

etsi: join with **videbat**: see note B. IV, 20.

idem: subject of fore and explained by the appositive **ut** clause.

ut—effugerent: "*that they would escape owing to their speed.*" The Britons were armed with a long sword and a light buckler. What was the armor of the legionary soldier? See page 16.

si essent—pulsi: subj. in Virtual O.O., representing the fut. pl. indic.—**si erunt pulsi**—in O.R., H. L., 269, 8: R. C., 408.

diutius: join with **non**; "*they could not for any length of time withstand.*"

quos—potuerunt: "*and pursuing them over as great a distance as (= as far as) their strength and speed allowed.*"—**tanto spatio**: abl. where we would have expected the acc. of Extent of Space.—**cursu et viribus**: abl. of Instrument.

occiderunt: so. **nostri milites**.

Chapter 36

his—numerum—duplicavit: = **his duplicem numerum imperavit**; **his** is dat. of Indirect Object.

quem—imperaverat: see B. IV, 27.

propinqua die aequinoctii: Causal abl. abs.; "*as the day of the equinox was near.*" This was the period of equinoctial gales: As Caesar

landed in Britain on Aug. 27th, and left (according to Napoleon III) probably Sept. 11th or 12th, we can see how stubbornly the Britons must have resisted his landing, since he got no farther than the shore in his first expedition.—*dies* is fem. in the sing. when it refers to a fixed or set day.

infirmis—navibus. Causal abl. abs.; “since his ships were unseaworthy.”

hiemi—existimabat: “he did not think that the voyage ought to be exposed to (the risk of) a storm.”—*hiemi*: dat. with a compound of *sub*—, H. L., 229, 4.—*subjiciendam*: *sc. esse*; Gerundival infin., H. L., 189.

naves solvit: see note on *solvit*, B. IV, 23.

eodem portus capere: “to make the same ports,” see note on *tertia vigilia*, B. IV, 23.

infra: “further,” down the channel, i.e., below *Boulogne*.

Chapter 37

essent expositi: The full phrase is *milites ex navibus in terram exponere*. This clause refers to the *duae onerariae*, referred to at the end of the preceding chapter.

proficiscens: “on his departure.”

pacatos: see B. IV, 22.

non ita magno numero: “with not a very large number”; this use of *ita* is confined to negative sentences.

circumsteterunt: *sc. noscos milites*, which is also to be supplied as the object of *jusserunt*.

si—nolent: subj. in Virtual O.O. after *jusserunt*.

orbe facto: in cases of extreme danger, the Roman soldiers formed a circle with their faces to the enemy and their baggage in the centre. We should say “forming a hollow square.”

celeriter: note the emphatic position of the adverb.

suis auxilio: for the two datives, see H. L., 228, 1, 2; R. C., 431.

horis: abl. of Comparison after *amplius*; *co. amplius octingentos equites habere*, B. IV, 12; *amplius, plus, minus, longius*, may or may not affect the syntax of the accompanying words.

paucis—acceptis: “with trifling loss.”



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of
human knowledge in
797,885 volumes

Instant access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

as *imperat* is an historical present.—*possent*: Virtual O.O. For the gerundive with *curo*, see H. L., 187, 9.

modum formamque: “*the size and style.*”

subductiones: “*hauling up*” on land, or “*beaching*” (cf. *B. IV.*, 29). The plural is used because more than one vessel is referred to. Explain *naves subducere*, *naves deducere*.

humiliores: sc., *naves*: “*lower.*” The vessels had less elevation above the water.

quam quibus = *quam* (*eas naves*); *quibus*.

in nostro mari: the Mediterranean.

id eo magis: sc. *facit*: “*and he does this the more (= and all the more) for the following reason.*”

propter crebras commutationes: he refers to the varying currents in the Channel.

ad onera: sc. *transportanda* from the *transportanda* following.—*transportanda* agrees with the nearest noun.

in reliquis maribus: the different parts of the Mediterranean were known under different names.

actuarias: “*furnished with oars*” as well as with sails. Note that *impero* can be used with acc. and inf. when the infinitive is passive. What would be the more usual construction? *retrahi imperat*: cf. *B. V.*, 7.

usui: dat. of Purpose, H. L., 228, 1; R. C., 431.

ad armandas naves: “*for equipping vessels.*” Spain supplied metal, cables, rigging, etc.

conventibus: Caesar as proconsul held assizes or courts at the chief cities of Northern Italy.

Galliae citerioris = *Galliae Cisalpinæ*.

a *Pirustis*: the *Pirustae* were a tribe occupying the modern *Herzegovina*.

qui doceant: “*to inform him*”; Final Rel. and Subj., H. L., 232, 2; R. C., 388.

paratos satisfacere = *paratos (esse) ad satisfaciendum*: the infin. after *paratos esse* is on the analogy of *velle* which takes the infin.

perceptis: “*having been listened to.*”

ad certam diem: “*by a stated day*”; Time Prospective, H. L., 117, 6.

nisi—fecerint: subj. of Virtual O.O. in Primary Sequence, representing fut. pf. indic. — nisi feceritis—in O. R., H. L., 269, 8: R. C., 408.

arbitros: "assessors," arbitrators."

qui—aestimatio—constituant: see qui doceant, page 80. — litis aestimatio in criminal law is the assessment of the amount of damages which a convicted person has to pay.

Chapter 2

citeriorem Galliam = Galliam Cisalpinam.

revertitur: give the principal parts; generally revertor is to return before completing one's journey; redeo, after completing it.

ad exercitum: after wintering in Belgium: B. IV, 38.

inde = ex Gallia citeriore: Long estimates that Caesar must have travelled over 2,000 miles. In the beginning of the year he left the army in Belgium, passed through Transalpine Gaul, held court in Cisalpine Gaul, went to Illyricum, settled disputes there, and returned to Belgium in May or June.

circuitis omnibus hibernis: "after inspecting all the winter quarters."

in—inopia: "though in the greatest need of all kinds of material": see note on in—loco, B. IV, 33.

cujus: quod would be more usual. The attraction of the relative to the case of the antecedent (common in Greek) is not often met with in Latin.

instructas: "fully rigged."

neque abesse—possint: "and they were not far from being able to be launched within a few days," literally, "and they were not much short of that point that they might be launched."

deduci: see note on subduxerāt, B. IV, 29.

quid—velit: Indirect Question, H. L., 200: R. C., 362.

portum Itium: see note on tertia vigilia, B. IV, 23.

circiter triginta: Caesar is remarkably accurate in distances. The Roman mile was 1,618 yards, or 142 yards shorter than the English mile. The distance from Calais to Dover is 28 miles: from Boulogne to Folkestone 29 miles. Thirty Roman miles would be about 27½ English miles.

huic rei: "for carrying out this purpose," i.e., collecting a fleet at Portus Itius.

expeditis: "in fighting trim," "ready for action," i.e., without heavy baggage.

concilia: a general council of the Belgic Gauls which Caesar held at Samarobriua (now Amiens).

Chapter 3

plurimum—valet: the genitive after the neuter of pronouns and adjectives arises from their partitive sense. For the excellence of the cavalry of the Treviri, cp. *B. II, 24*: *equites Trevirorum, quorum inter Gallos virtutis opinio est singularis.*

ut—demonstrativus: *B. III, 11*; *IV, 10.*

Indutiomarus was opposed to the Romans. Caesar ordered the leading men of the state to take sides with Cingetorix, the son-in-law and rival of Indutiomarus. The latter took up arms against the Romans but was defeated and slain by Labienus. (*B. V, 7.*)

alter: Cingetorix.—**simul atque**: *H. L., 259, 4.*

in officio: "in allegiance," "loyal."

quae—gererentur: subj. in Indirect Question, *H. L., 200*; *R. C., 302.*

at: used to contrast the doings of two persons. Caesar has been speaking of Cingetorix; he now turns to describe the course of Indutiomarus.

Indutiomarus: join with *instituit* at the end of the chapter.

isque: -que joins *cogere* with *bellum parare*.

his: join with *abditis*: "and he decided to prepare for war, after those who, owing to their age, were not able to take the field had been hid in the Ardennes wood."

per aetatem: they were either too young or too old.

abditis in silvam, really means "having been removed to the forest and hidden there." The accusative after *abdo* involves the idea of removal as well as of concealment.—**ingenti magnitudine**: abl. of Description: *H. L., 293, 6*; *R. C., 383 (a).*

privatim: "privately," i.e., for their own private security.

petere: used absolutely, "to make requests."

quoniam—possent: Virtual O.O. since Caesar is not stating the real motive, but merely what they said was their motive, *H. L., 253, 6*; *R. C., 408.* Distinguish *virum consulere*, *viro (dat.) consulere*, in *virum consulere*.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



—*tam egregiam*: *tam* is often attached to an adjective to give it additional force; cp. the frequent use of *tantus* for simple *magnus*.
 —*perspexisset*: subj. in O.O.; but *cujus perspexisset* may be Causal Rel. and Subj., H. L., 252, 4.

graviter tulit: "was annoyed at."

et qui—exarsit: "and whereas he had been of an unfriendly disposition toward us even before, he was still more exasperated through resentment at this act (or through this grievance)." —*qui fuisset*: Concessive Rel. and Subj., H. L., 255, Note. —*inunico animo*: abl. of Description, H. L., 298, 6: R. C., 383 (b).

Chapter 5

Meldi or *Meldae*, a people of *Gallia Belgica* dwelling between the *Sequana* (*Seine*) and the *Matrona* (*Marne*) near the modern town of *Meaux*, a corrupt form of *Meldi*.

revertisse: conjugate this verb.

cursum tenere: *comparo cursum capere*, B. IV, 26.

atque: "but": rather adversative than connective here.

eodem: "to the same spot" = *in eundem locum*.

equitatus: the nobility who served as cavalry.

numero: abl. of Respect: H. L., 293, 7: R. C., 414.

perspexerat: "he had observed."

obsidum loco: "instead of hostages," "hostages": when found with a genitive *loco* has a semi-prepositional force. We also find *in loco*. The gen. is Objective (H. L., 287, 3) after the analogy of *gratiā, causā*, with genitive.

cum—abesset: "on account of his absence"; *cum* Causal: or "while he personally was absent"; Virtual O.O. representing fut. indic. of the actual thought.

motum = rebellionem: "an uprising."

Chapter 6

Dumnorix had conspired against the Romans 58 B.C., but was pardoned owing to the entreaties of his brother *Divitiacus* (B. I, 20). For fear that he might a second time stir up strife, Caesar desired to take him to Britain.

ante: B. I, 3, 18.

magni animi, magnae auctoritatis: Descriptive genitives, H. L., 288, 5: R. C., 383.

quod—cognoverat: explain the syntax of quod: H. L., 252, 2: R. C., 256.

accedebat huc quod: **accedit** may take (1) an *ut* clause of Result with subj. or (2) a substantive clause introduced by **quod** with indicative.

graviter ferebant: the Aedui annually elected a magistrate called *Vergobretus* or "judge," and were naturally annoyed that the right of election had been taken out of their hands (B. I, 16). Caesar (B. VII, 33) states that the person holding this office could not leave the state during his term of office, and that no one could be elected if a living member of the family held the post.

neque—auderant: "and yet they did not dare to send ambassadors to Caesar for the purpose of objecting or petitioning against (the appointment)."

omnibus precibus: "by all kinds of entreaties."

quod—timeret: "because, being unaccustomed to sailing, he was, as he said, afraid of the sea"; the subjunctive **timeret** implies that the reason given was not the real one; H. L., 252, 1, 2: R. C., 408 (b).

religionibus: "by religious scruples."

impediri sese diceret: **diceret** by mistaken analogy with **timeret** is itself put in the subj. We should have expected, **quod impediretur** or **quod sese impediri dicebat**. Sometimes in causal clauses a verb of 'saying' is inserted parenthetically merely introducing the statement.

id: the request to be left behind.

sollicitare depends on **coepit**.—**sevocare singulos**: "to call them aside individually"; "to hold secret meetings with persons individually." Note that **coepit** means here "he began"; H. L., 219, 2.

territare: either (1) Historical infin. or (2) depending on **coepit**. Note the intensive or iterative force of the frequentative **territu**.

non—feri: supply 'saying' from **territare**; cp. note on **sese**, B. V, 3.—**non—ut**: "it was not without a reason that."—**feri** is impersonal; **fit ut** = "it happens that"; cp. **accidit ut**.

id—necaret: "(saying) it was the policy of Caesar to transport into Britain and murder there all those whom he was afraid to kill (in sight of Gaul) before the eyes of the Gauls."

interficere—vereretur: note that verbs of "fearing" may take an infinitive in the sense of "to be afraid," "not to have the courage" to do a thing.—**interficere**, "to kill" in any manner; **verere** implies cruelty or injustice.

*Historical & Inferential - Level
description of*

For *traductos necaret* see H. L., 164 (c) Note.

fidem—*interponere*: "he pledged (or to pledge) his word to the rest," i.e., to those not in Caesar's power.—*interponere*: Historical infinitive, or after *coepit*, as *territare* above; so also *poscere*.

iusjurandum, civil oath: *sacramentum*, oath taken by the military.

ex usu: *op. usui*.—*communi consilio*: as a united people.

Chapter 7

Caesar: join with *statuebat*.

quod—*tribuerat*: H. L., 252, 2; R. C., 256.

coercendum—*statuebat*: "determined that *Dumnorix* should be checked and restrained by whatever means he could."—*coercendum*, *deterrendum* (*esse*), Gerundival Infin., H. L., 189; the dat. of the Agent (*sibi*) is omitted, H. L., 188, 4 (b); R. C., 351.—*posset*: see *Caesar cum coercere et deterrere*: subj., in Virtual O.O.

longius: "too far."

prospiciendum: see *statuebat*: "he made up his mind that he must take precautions."—the dat. of the Agent (*sibi*) is omitted; see *coercendum* above.

What difference is there between the use of *coercendum* and *deterrendum* (*esse*), and of *prospiciendum* (*esse*)? H. L., 188, 5 (c).

ne—*posset*: "that he might not be able to do any harm to himself (*Caesar*) or the state."—*ne*, see H. L., 283, 5.—*quid*: Adverbial acc., H. L., 283, 9.

commoratus: "having delayed" = "being detained," "since he had to wait."

Corus: written also *Caurus*, *Chorus*, the N.W. wind. This would be unfavorable to any one sailing from *Boulogne* to *Britain*. Note the apposition as in *urbs Roma*, *flumen Rhenus*.

partem: acc. of Extent, H. L., 283, 10; R. C., 231.

omnis temporis: "of every season."

dabat operam: "he took pains," "he did his best."—*contineret*—*cognosceret*; subj. in Final Clause, H. L., 240, 8; R. C., 386.

milites = *pedites*; the infantry formed the main strength of the Roman army.

conscendere in naves: we also find *conscendere naves*.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of
human knowledge in
797,885 volumes

Instant access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

Africo: called by the Greeks $\Lambda\iota\psi$, as it blows from Libya. The S.W. wind is still said to be called by the modern Italians *Africo* or *Gherbino*.

intermisso: "having calmed down."

longius: probably Caesar went as far north as the North Foreland, the ebb-tide carrying his ships from the shore.

eam partem insulae: see note on *septem—progressus*, B. IV, 23.

admodum—laudanda: "the pluck of the soldiers was highly praiseworthy."—*admodum* properly "according to measure," i.e., "in as great measure as can be." In combination with numerals it denotes approximation, and often occurs in Livy and Curtius; Cicero uses it in the phrase *nihil admodum*: "in reality nothing at all."

non—labore: "since there was no relaxation in their exertion in rowing." The *abl. abs.* is Causal.

accessum—navibus: "all the ships reached."

cum: "though"; Concessive.

cum annotinis, sc. navibus: "added to the ships used in the previous year." In B. V, 1, these are called *veteres*.

quas—fecerat: "which each one had built for his own service."—*commodi* either (1) genitive governed by *causā* understood, or (2) *sui commodi* is Descriptive Genitive depending on *quas*.

quae—amplius octingentae: "of which more than eight hundred"; see note on *horis*: B. IV, 37.

se—abdidierant: see note on *abditis in silvam*, B. V, 8.

Chapter 9

exposito exercitu: see note on *essent expositi*, B. IV, 37.

castris idoneo: "suitable for a camp." What adjectives govern a dative case? H. L., 286, 10.

consedissent: Indirect Question; H. L., 200: R. C., 362.

cohortibus decem: probably the two best from each of the five legions.

qui—essent; the pronoun generally agrees with the nearest antecedent: Final Rel. and Subj., H. L., 232, 2: R. C., 388.—For the two datives, see H. L., 228, 1, 2: R. C., 431.

de tertia vigilia: *de* in such expressions of time means 'starting from that point'; hence the meaning is: "after the third watch was set."

veritas navibus: dative of Indirect Object after verbs of fearing, *metuo* and *timeo*, is common; but not common with *vereor*: "*for his ships.*"

molli: "*shelving,*" or "*sandy*"; where there were no dangerous rocks: cp. *B. IV, 23*, at the end.

praesidio navibusque: dat. after a compound of *prae*—, *H. L., 229, 4*: *R. C., 431 (a)*.

equitatu atque essedis: usually *cum* would be expressed with abl. of Accompaniment without an adjective: *H. L., 293, 3*.

ad flumen: the Great Stour near Canterbury. The north bank is said to be higher than the south and so would form a natural defence.

in silvas abdidierunt: see note on *abditis in silvam, B. V, 3*.

et natura et opere: "*both naturally and artificially.*"

opere: explained afterwards by *crebris arboribus succisia*.

ipsi—propugnabant: "*they themselves in small bands rushed out of the woods to fight,*" or "*they themselves here and there hurled missiles from the woods.*"

ingredi prohibebant: note that *prohibeo* takes acc. and inf., not *quominus* with subjunctive.

testudine facta: "*having formed a testudo.*" This movement was done by the soldiers of the inner files locking their shields above their heads while the outer files protected the sides. The resemblance of the locked shields to a tortoise shell (*testudo*) gave this formation its name.

eos fugientes: *eos* is governed by *vetuit* and *fugientes* governed by *prosequi*.

Chapter 10

postridie ejus diei = postero die, "*on the next day,*" literally "*on the morrow of that day*": *postridie = posteri die*, a locative of time: *ejus diei*, Descriptive Gen.

expeditionem: 'the rapid march of a flying column.'

aliquantum itineris: "*some distance*": *aliquantum*: acc. of Extent; *itineris*: Partitive Gen.

extremi: "*the rear guard*" of the enemy. Others take it "*the rear*" of the expeditionary force of Caesar. In that case *jam in conspectu* means "*still in sight of Caesar*" who remained behind in the camp.

qui nuntiarent: "*to announce*": *qui* Final, *H. L., 232, 2*: *R. C., 388*.

afflictas atque ejectas esse : " *had been shattered and thrown up on the beach.* "

quod—subsisterent—possent : subj. of Virtual O.O. ; H. L., 253, 6 ; R. C., 408 (a).

eo concursu : " *the consequent collision.* "

Chapter 11

legiones = pedites : see note on milites, B. V, 7.

revocari : i.e., from pursuing the enemy.

resistere : " *to halt.* "—**revertitur** : see note, B. V, 2

coram perspicit : " *he sees with his own eyes.* "

sic ut : literally " *to the extent that.* " The construction is somewhat irregular. Regularly **sic ut** would be omitted, and the acc. with the infin. in the clause **reliquae—viderentur** would be used. The only justification for Caesar's mode of expression would be that the regular construction would have three infinitives coming together.

amissis—navibus : Concessive use of abl. abs. " *though about forty ships had been lost.* "

magno negotio ; " *though with great trouble.* "

fabros deligit : usually a corps of " *wrights* " under the direction of **praefectus fabrum** was attached to each legion. Here in the absence of such a corps, Caesar calls for volunteers out of the legion.

Labiens scribit = Labieno imperat, hence the **ut** clause following, H. L., 240, 2.

possit : Virtual O.O.

his legionibus : abl. of Instrument : H. L., 18, 2 (1) ; R. C., 145 (a).

multae operae ac laboris : Descriptive Gen. : H. L., 288, 5 ; R. C., 383.

subduci : see note on **subduxerat**, B. IV, 29.

ne nocturnis—intermissis : translate freely, " *not allowing the work of the soldiers to cease even in the night time.* "

praesidio—navibus : H. L., 228, 2 ; R. C., 431.

eodem : " *to the same place,* " i.e., to the camp by the river.

summa—administrandi : " *the supreme command and entire conduct of the war,* " literally " *the whole of the command and the whole (of the) conduct of the war.* "

communi consilio : " *by common consent* " ; **op. publico consilio.**



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



haec : sc. animalia.

acuti : "sentiment."

loca : "climate"; op. frigidissima locis, B. IV, 1.

Chapter 13

natura : "in shape." Caesar may have gained his knowledge of the shape of Britain from the natives or from the then extant works of the Greek writers, since the island was not circumnavigated by the Romans till 84 A. D., more than a century after Caesar's time ; op. Tacitus (Ag. 10); hanc oram novissimi maris tum primum Romana classis circumventa insulam esse Britanniam affirmavit. Strabo (IV, 5, 1) mentions the fact that Britain is triangular and says that its longest side is parallel to Celtica, and is 4,300 stadia, or about 500 miles in length. Celtica was a term applied to the country generally between the mouth of the Rhine and the Pyrenees. Pomponius Mela (III, 6) compares Britain in shape to Sicily, and says one side faces Gaul, and another side Germany.

Cantium : now Kent, which is said to be from the Celtic *Kenn*, 'headland,' or *Can* ; cp. Kenmore, Canmore, Cantire.

quo—appelluntur : "at which almost all the ships from Gaul put in."

inferior, sc. angulus, i. e., Land's End, off the Coast of Cornwall. The distance from North Foreland to Land's End is said to be 344 British or 874 Roman miles. Strabo's statement is evidently taken from Caesar. The indentations of the coast may be taken into account by Caesar.

alterum, sc. latus : op. Tacitus (Ag. 10) Britannia in orientem Germaniae, in occidentem Hispaniae obtenditur : "Britain lies opposite Germany on the east, opposite Spain on the west." Tacitus (Ag. 34) also says that Ireland is between Britain and Spain. The word Hibernia is derived from the Celtic *Brin* or *Iveriu*, meaning "Western" (Max Müller, *Science of Languages*, Vol. I, 284).

dimidio minor : "a half smaller"; literally "less by a half"; abl. of Amount of Difference, H. L., 88, 5. Great Britain is said to contain 84,000 square miles ; Ireland 36,000 square miles.

pari spatio transmissus : literally "but of the same interval of space across as from Gaul to Britain."—pari spatio : abl. of Description, H. L., 293, 6. transmissus : gen. depending on pari spatio.

The distance from Carnsore Point in Southern Ireland to St. David's Head in Wales is 53 miles ; from the Mull of Cantire in Scotland to Fairhead in Northern Ireland is 13 miles ; from Dover to Calais 28 miles.

cursu: "passage."

Mona: some have supposed that the *Isle of Man* is meant as it answers the description, but (1) *Mona* in Tacitus (Ag. 14; Ann. XIV, 29) can refer only to Anglesey; (2) Caesar may have been informed wrongly as to the position of Anglesey; (3) the *Isle of Man* is properly called *Monopia*, not *Mona*. According to Taylor's *Words and Places*, *Mona* is from the Celtic *Monn*, "a district"; cp. *Maine*, *Mayence* in France; *Mantua* in Italy; *La Mancha* in Spain; *Mansfield*, *Manchester*, *Menai* straits in England. Others say it is from the Welsh *mon*, "alone"; or *menedh*, "an island."

subjectae: "adjacent," Caesar no doubt refers to the Hebrides, Orkney and Shetland Islands, but wrongly places them in the Channel between Britain and Ireland.

nonnulli: probably some Greek geographers whose works have perished.

sub bruma: *bruma* = *brevima* = *brevissima*, sc. *dies*: Dec. 21st.

nisi = *nisi quod*: "except that."

certis--mensuris: "by exact measurements made by the water clock." The *clepsydra* is meant. The water-clock was said to have been invented by the Babylonians, and was constructed on the principle of the hour-glass.

ut fert opinio: "according to their belief": referring to the *nonnulli scriptores*.

septingentorum millium: 700 Roman miles would represent 643 English miles. The western coast of Britain is said to be about 670, not allowing for indentations. Caesar is not far from the mark.

tertium: sc. *latus*.—*septentriones*: see note, B. IV, 20. This side Caesar places on the north. It faces the east.

passuum octingentorum: 800 Roman miles would be about 735 English miles. This is probably not far from the truth, not allowing for the indentations of the Frith of Forth and Moray Firth.

angulus: Kent.

vicies--passuum: 2,000 Roman miles would be 1,839 English miles. The actual circumference of Britain, not counting indentations, is said to be 1,668 miles. Caesar's figures are fairly accurate.

Chapter 14

humanissimi: "most civilized": cp. Shakespeare, *Henry VI*, Second Part, I, 4, 7:

"Kent, in the commentaries of Caesar writ,
Is termed the civil'st place in all the isle."

interiores plerique: "the majority of the people of the inland districts."

lacte ac carne vivunt: **vivo** follows the analogy of **vescor** and takes the ablativus of Means: H. L., 136, 7, 8.

vitro: "woad," produced from the plant *Isatis tinctoria*, or Dyer's Woad (akin to *Shepherd's Purse*), by fermentation, and much used till indigo took its place. The *Picts* are said to have got their name from painting their bodies (*picti*, "painted").

hoc: "by this,"—**horridiore—aspectu**: "of rather terrible appearance": abl. of Description, H. L., 293, 6: R. C., 383.

promisso—capillo: abl. of Description, H. L., 293, 6: R. C., 383.

quo: adverb, literally: "whither," = "to whose house."

virgo deducta est: "was led home as a bride": cf. *ducere uxorem in matrimonium*.

Chapter 15

essedaril: see note on *praemisso—essedariis*: B. IV. 24.

tamen (ita conflixerunt) ut—fuerint: "still (they fought in such a way) that our men were victorious in every quarter." Note that *ut—fuerint* is Consecutive; H. L., 203: R. C., 386 (b); and that the perf. subj. expresses a single fact; H. L., 203, 2 (b).—**omnibus partibus**: Local abl., H. L., 119, 5.

compluribus interfectis: abl. abs.: "after killing quite a number."

cupidius: "too eagerly."

illi: "the enemy."

intermisso spatio: "after a short interval."

imprudentibus nostris: "while our men were off their guard."

se—ejecerunt: "they sallied forth." The impetuous character of the Celt was as strongly marked in Caesar's time as it was in later days.

in statione: see note on *in statione*, B. IV, 32.

subsidio: "as a reinforcement": H. L., 228, 1, 2: R. C., 431.

his primis: the first cohort of the legion regularly contained the finest troops.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of
human knowledge in
797,885 volumes

Instant access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

tres legiones : this is an unusually large number to send on a foraging expedition. Perhaps the lesson they had learned on a previous occasion may have made them more guarded (*B. IV, 32*).

Caio Trebonio : Caius Trebonius was one of Caesar's legati and distinguished himself by his personal bravery when the winter quarters of Cicero were attacked by the German horse (*B. VI, 40*).

advolaverunt, sc. hostes.

sic uti—absisterent = tam celeriter advolaverunt ut—absisterent : "so impetuously did they rush forward that they did not stop short of the companies of the legions."—**signis legionibusque = signis legionum** (by *hendiadys*). The signa were the standards of the manipuli ; see p. 17.

subsidio sc. legionum : "the support of the legions."—**fido** and **confide** take (1) dat. of person, (2) abl. of thing, *H. L., 176, 6*.

praecipites : "in headlong flight."

sui colligendi : "of recovering themselves," "of rallying" ; for syntax see *H. L., 187, 8*.

protinus : put here, as usually, after the expression it limits "immediately after that rout."

quae : antecedent is **auxilia**.—**unquam** and **usquam** are usually used in sentences either negative or virtually negative.

summis copiis : "with their full strength," "in full force."

Chapter 18

finis Cassivelauni : embraced Middlesex, Hertfordshire and Buckingham.

uno omnino loco : where Caesar crossed is a matter of doubt. Sunbury, Conway Stakes near Walton, Kingston, Westminster are advocated by different authorities.

hoc : agrees with **loco** understood.

ad alteram ripam : "on the opposite bank."

praefixis : driven into the sloping bank ; on the north side of the Thames.—**defixae** refers to those in the bed of the river.

perfuga : said of a deserter with reference to those to whom he flees ; **transfuga** with reference to those from whom he has fled.

ea celeritate—ierunt : "but our soldiers advanced with such speed and such force, though they had only their heads above water that," etc. **cum**, Concessive.

capite solo : abl. of Amount of Difference, H. L., 88, 5.

Chapter 19

ut—supra : B. V, 17.

contentionis : "of continuing the war."

amplioribus copiis : "the most of his forces."

millibus—quattuor essedariorum : if each chariot contained six men besides the driver, as it seems it did, there would be about 600 chariots.

servabat=observabat : "kept watching" ; note the force of the imperfects all through this chapter.

locis—in locis : Local abl., H. L., 119, 5.

eis regionibus : "throughout that district" : Local abl., H. L., 119, 5 : R. C., 98.

cum—ejecerat : cum, 'whenever' : H. L., 203, 8.

via semitisque : via is a regular road ; semita, a by-path.

et—confligebat : "and attended with these he was wont to engage with great danger to our cavalry."—**nostrorum equitum** : Objective Gen. : H. L., 287, 2.

hoc metu : "through fear of this" : the danger of being cut to pieces by the British charioteers : cp. hoc dolore, B. V, 4.

relinquebatur—poterant : "the consequence was that Caesar did not allow too far a departure from the line of march of the legions, and that only so much harm was inflicted on the enemy by laying waste the lands and by setting fire to the buildings as the soldiers of the legions could cause by a toilsome march."—**discedi** : impersonal infin.

noceretur : impersonal : governs **hostibus** : H. L., 178, 2 : R. C., 357.

labore et itinere=labore itineris (by hendiadys).

Chapter 20

Trinobantes : occupied Essex and Suffolk. Their chief town was Camalodnum, afterwards a Roman colony under the name of *Colonia Castrorum* : now Colchester. The proper way to translate this sentence is to divide it into four English sentences :—

"Meanwhile the Trinobantes, about the most powerful state of that district, send ambassadors to Caesar, and promise to surrender (themselves) to him, and obey his orders. From that (state) the youthful Mandubratius, who had attached himself to Caesar, had come to him in continental Gaul. Immanuentius, the father of this (Mandubratius), had held sovereign power in that state and had been slain by Cassivellaunus, (while) he himself (Mandubratius) had escaped death by flight. They (the Trinobantes) ask (Caesar) to defend Mandubratius from all wrong-doing on the part of Cassivellaunus and to send (a man) to the state to rule it and to exercise sovereign power." See page 58.

ex qua, sc. civitate.

Caesaris fidem secutus, "having accepted the protection of," "having attached himself to," said of an inferior. The superior was said *recipere in fidem*.

ab injuria Cassivellauni "from all wrong doing on the part of Cassivellaunus": Subjective Gen. 287, 2: R. C., 420.

qui praesit: Final Rel. and Subj.: H. L., 232, 2: R. C., 388.

ad numerum: "to the required amount."

Chapter 21

The Cenimagni probably occupied Bedford and Cambridge; the Segontiaci, Berks; the Ancalites, Oxford and Buckingham; the Bibroci, Berks; the Cassi, Hertfordshire, though this is largely conjecture. The defection of the Trinobantes was ruinous to the British cause.

oppidum = Verulamium, now St. Albans.

satis magnus, "quite a large."

convenerit: "mustered": subjunctive in Virtual O.O. H. L., 253, 6: R. C., 408 (a).

autem: "now."

cum—munierunt: "whenever they fortify": note the tense, H. L., 263, 9: see note on *cum—insinuaverunt*, B. IV, 33.

natura atque opere: "by its natural position and especially by its fortifications," *op. natura et opere*, B. V, 9.

oppugnare: "to storm": *expugnare*, "to take by storm."

multi, sc. Britanni.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



inanes : of two kinds, (1) those of the first relay which returned to the continent and landed their cargo and were sent back ; (2) those that Labienus had had built.

. et prioris commentus : " both those of the former relay after the troops were landed " ; so. *ea*, in apposition to *quae*, both before *prioris* and *quae* following.—**prioris commentus** : Descriptive Gen. 288, 5 : B. C., 283.

ne excluderetur : " that he might not be prevented from sailing by the time of the year."

acquinoctium suberat : Dec. 21st.

necessario—collocavit : " he of necessity stowed his soldiers in narrower space than was usual."

solvisset : see note on *solvit*, B. IV, 23.

secunda vigilia : from 9 p.m. to 12 p.m.

EXERCISES IN LATIN PROSE.

NOTE.—The exercises are based on the chapters of Caesar, both as regards Vocabulary and Constructions. Before attempting an exercise, the student is supposed to have carefully read the chapter of Caesar, noting each word, phrase and construction, and also to have looked up the grammatical references. The exercise should then be done without reference to the text. Each exercise is divided into two parts. The first part is intended to test the pupil's knowledge of the ordinary inflections and vocabulary, and does not involve a knowledge of the subjunctive mood. Consequently the first part of each exercise may be taken up in order before the second part is attempted. For the second part of each exercise, a knowledge of the subjunctive is implied. It is only by constant drill that a knowledge of this mood can be obtained.

The references are to the pages and sections of the *New First Latin Book* by Henderson and Little, and to sections only in Robertson and 'Cruthers' *Latin Lessons for Beginners*.

EXERCISE I

Caesar iv, 20

A

1. A small part of the summer was left for carrying on war.
2. In almost all the Gallic wars, the Britons had furnished aid to our enemies.
3. He was aware that the winters are early.
4. The sea coast and the districts opposite Gaul were known to the merchants.
5. He ascertained that the Britons were carrying on war.
6. We knew nothing about the island, for no one but the merchants go to it.
7. He decided to go to Britain in person at the end of the summer.
8. Can the merchants tell us anything about the island?
9. How large is the island? Did he call the merchants to him from all sides?

B

Subordinate Clauses in Oratio Obliqua : H. L., 268 ; 269 : R. C., 408 (a)

Indirect Question : H. L., 200 ; 234 : R. C., 362.

Conditional Clauses : H. L., 249 ; 250 : R. C., 475-479.

1. Caesar thought it would be of great service to him, if he ascertained what harbors of the island were suitable for landing.
2. He thought that he would find out the size of the island, and the character of the tribes that inhabited it.
3. The merchants did not know what experience in war the Britons had.
4. If the Britons had been able to tell Caesar the extent of the island, he would not have gone to Britain.

EXERCISE II

Caesar iv, 21

A

1. Thinking him to be a suitable person, they sent him ahead with a warship.
2. They themselves set out with all their forces into the territory of the Morini.
3. He ordered the ships, which he had built the previous summer, to assemble at this point.
4. When his plan became known, the ambassadors, who had come from several states of the island to him, promised to give hostages.
5. After hearing the ambassadors, he made liberal promises, and sent them back home.
6. After the conquest of the Atrebates, Commius, whom Caesar considered faithful to himself, was made king of that state.
7. They announced that they would soon come there.
8. They did not dare to land from the ship, and five days after returned to the continent.

B

Temporal clauses with praequam : H. L., 259, 8.

Substantive Clauses of Purpose : H. L., 239 ; 240 : R. C., 424.

Indirect Question : H. L., 200 ; 234 : R. C., 362.

Cum, meaning since : H. L., 204, 3 : R. C., 397.

Subordinate Clauses in Oratio Obliqua : H. L., 265, 2 : R. C., 408 (a).

1. Before he set out for Britain, he ordered his lieutenant to cross the sea in a warship.
2. He instructed them to report to him the character and size of the harbors.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of
human knowledge in
797,885 volumes

Instant access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

EXERCISE IV

Caesar iv, 23

A

1. After these matters were arranged, he ordered the cavalry to embark.
2. They themselves reached the island about the fourth hour of the day with all the ships.
3. They beheld the forces of the enemy drawn up on all the hills.
4. Javelins could be thrown from the higher ground upon the shore.
5. At last he obtained weather suitable for sailing.
6. He did not think this place at all suitable for disembarking.
7. He assembled the military tribunes. The lieutenants assembled. The soldiers were assembled.

B

Cum, meaning since: H. L., 204, 3: R. C., 397.

Consecutive Clauses: H. L., 236: R. C., 371.

Dum, meaning until: H. L., 259, 7: R. C., 273.

Indirect Question: H. L., 200, 234: R. C., 362.

Substantive Clauses of Purpose: H. L., 239, 240: R. C., 424.

1. Since the cavalry advanced a little too slowly into the further harbor, all the ships were not able to reach Britain at the same time.
2. The mountain was so high that the enemy were able to throw darts upon the shore.
3. Since he thought the weather by no means suitable for sailing, he waited for nine hours until the rest of the ships should assemble there.
4. They will point out both what they have ascertained from the messengers, and what they wish to be done.
5. He will warn them to disembark as quickly as possible.

EXERCISE V

Caesar iv, 24

A

1. The barbarians sent their cavalry ahead.
2. They were accustomed to use this kind of force.
3. They tried to prevent our men from landing from the ships.
4. Our men landed from the ships. Our men were landed from the ships. The soldiers embarked. He embarked the soldiers.

5. On account of their size, the ships could not approach the shore.
6. Our men must at once leap down from the ships, and fight with the enemy (188, 5).
7. Terrified by these circumstances, the enemy were willing to surrender.

B

Consecutive Clauses: H. L., 236: R. C., 371.

Final Clauses: H. L., 197: R. C., 386.

Quod, because, with Indic.: H. L., 252, 2: R. C., 256.

1. The enemy were so terrified that they did not dare to advance into the water.
2. We could not land, because the ships were so large that they could not be moored except in deep water.
3. When the barbarians became aware of the plan of the Romans, they sent forward all their cavalry in order to prevent our men from landing.
4. The enemy advanced into the water, in order that they might be able to hurl their javelins upon the ships.

EXERCISE VI

Caesar iv, 25

A

1. I am accustomed. He was accustomed. They are accustomed.
We were accustomed.
2. When Caesar observed this, he ordered his men to moor the ships at the exposed flank of the enemy.
3. The enemy were dislodged with slings and arrows.
4. This movement was of great service to our men.
5. Alarmed at the size of the ships, the enemy retired.
6. While our soldiers were wavering, he who was carrying the eagle of the tenth legion leapt down from the ship into the water.

B

Subordinate Clauses in O.O.: H. L., 265, 2: R. C., 408 (a).

Cum narrative: H. L., 262, 4: R. C., 397.

Substantive Clauses of Purpose: H. L., 239, 240: R. C., 424.

1. The eagle-bearer ordered the men to leap down from the ships if they did not wish to let the eagle fall into the hands of the enemy.
2. When the standard-bearer saw that our men were wavering he charged them not to betray the eagle to the enemy.

3. When he had proclaimed in a loud voice that he at least would do his duty to his country and commander, he began to advance against the enemy.
4. Our men exhorted one another to leap down from the ship and follow the standard.

EXERCISE VII

Caesar iv, 28

A

1. The battle was long and fierce.
2. Our men could not follow the standards closely.
3. The barbarians quickly threw our men into confusion.
4. They hurled darts upon them as they landed from the ships.
5. Caesar saw that his men were in trouble.
6. Spurring on their horses, they would assail our men while at a disadvantage.
7. As soon as our men got footing on dry land, they charged the enemy and soon put them to flight.
8. We were not able to pursue the enemy farther because the cavalry had not been able to reach the island.

B

Repeated acts in the past: H. L., 263, 8: R. C., 119.

Cum narrative: F. L., 262, 4: R. C., 397.

1. Whenever we saw that our men were being attacked by superior numbers, we sent aid to them.
2. Whenever the enemy saw any disembarking singly, they kept hurling darts at them.
3. When Caesar saw that the enemy were assailing his men while at a disadvantage, he ordered the lieutenants to send up reinforcements.
4. When Caesar learned that the ships, in which the cavalry were being transported, had not been able to hold their course, he knew that he could not pursue the enemy far.

EXERCISE VIII

Caesar iv, 27.

A

1. As soon as the enemy saw that the Roman forces were retreating into camp, they decided on an immediate attack.
2. We promised to give hostages, and not attack our neighbors.
3. We have shown above that these men were sent ahead.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

B

Cum narrative: *H. L.*, 262, 4: *R. C.*, 397.

Consecutive clauses: *H. L.*, 236: *R. C.*, 371.

1. Two ships were lost just as they were approaching the shore and could be seen from the camp.
2. Such a storm suddenly arose that the ships were not able to hold their course.
3. The storm was so great that many ships were carried back to the point from which they had set out.
4. When our men were coming into camp the enemy made such a sudden attack that a large part of the baggage was lost.

EXERCISE X

Caesar iv, 29

A

1. A full moon usually makes the tides very high.
2. The ships, in which the army had been transported, were being filled by the tide.
3. Many ships were shattered; several were useless for sailing.
4. They had provided corn for winter.
5. The army must be transported.
6. Caesar had had the army transported in warships.
7. All things, which are of use for repairing ships, were wanting.
8. The baggage of the whole army had been lost.

B

Final Relative: *H. L.*, 232, 2: *R. C.*, 388.

Final Clauses: *H. L.*, 197: *R. C.*, 386.

Cum meaning since: *H. L.*, 204, 3: *R. C.*, 397.

1. There were no other ships in which the army could be carried back.
2. Caesar had twenty warships built in which to transport the army.
3. He ordered them to beach the ships, that the baggage might not be lost.
4. Since many ships, which had been drawn up on dry land, were shattered by the storm, Caesar decided to send for workmen who should build new ships.

EXERCISE XI**Caesar iv, 30****A**

1. On learning of the arrival of the legions, the Britons assembled to carry out Caesar's orders.
2. The Romans lacked cavalry and ships and grain.
3. The legions had been transported without baggage.
4. They learned that they had transported the army without baggage.
5. They thought that Caesar had crossed over to Britain with warlike intentions.
6. They began to leave the camp secretly and return to their own people.

B

When the chiefs, whom Caesar had called together for the purpose of ascertaining these things, perceived that the forces of the Romans were few and that they lacked corn, they thought the best thing to do was to retreat as far as possible from the sea coast because they were confident that the Romans would not dare to advance more than twenty miles from their camp.

EXERCISE XII**Caesar iv, 31****A**

1. Although Caesar had not yet learned their plans, nevertheless he was suspecting that they would not give hostages.
2. He ordered his men to gather corn from the fields into the camp daily.
3. Very many ships had been very seriously shattered and twelve were lost.
4. They promised to give hostages and bring corn into the camp.
5. The materials, which were of use for repairing ships, were brought from the continent.
6. Caesar was suspecting that they would try to destroy the ships.

B

As soon as Caesar was informed that many ships had been shattered, he suspected that the enemy would gather all their forces and make an attack on the camp. In order that he might as soon as possible transport his army to Gaul, he ordered his men to build twenty new ships as soon as possible. In the meantime he kept his cavalry posted in front of the camp, and sent scouts to ascertain what the enemy were doing and how large forces they were assembling.

EXERCISE XIII

Caesar iv, 32

A

1. Two legions were sent to forage.
2. Those who were on guard before the gates of the camp reported to Caesar that they saw a great dust.
3. They saw a great dust in the direction in which the legions had gone.
4. Caesar suspected that the barbarians had formed some new plan.
5. Caesar ordered three legions to set out with him in the direction in which the soldiers had gone, and the rest to follow closely as soon as possible.
6. After advancing a little farther from the camp, they saw that the enemy were attacking our men vigorously, and that the legion could not hold out much longer.

B

Since Caesar had not been able to find out from the merchants how large forces of infantry and cavalry the barbarians had, nor where he could land his army, he sent Volusenus, whom he thought to be a suitable person, to urge the Britons to give hostages, and recognize the authority of the Roman people. But as this officer did not dare to land from his ship, he was not able to learn much about the island, and returned to Caesar after a few days. About the end of summer Caesar set out in person with a large army, and, after defeating the barbarians, demanded a large number of hostages from them.

EXERCISE XIV

Caesar iv, 33

A

1. Javelins were hurled from all sides by the enemy.
2. They generally try first to disorder the ranks.
3. After hurling their javelins, they leapt down from their horses and fought on foot.
4. Sometimes they withdrew from the battlefield.
5. Our cavalry were hard pressed by superior numbers of the enemy.
6. They were accustomed to rein in their horses at full speed.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of
human knowledge in
797,885 volumes

Instant access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

B

English present part. with causal force: H. L., 204, 5: R. C., 273.

Consecutive Clauses—qui consecutive: H. L., 236, 2: R. C., 371.

Indirect question: H. L., 207: R. C., 362.

Oratio Obliqua: H. L., 269, 8, Note: R. C., 403.

1. Seeing that his men were disarranged by the unusual tactics of the enemy and thinking that larger forces of cavalry and infantry were coming up, Caesar resolved to await the arrival of the tenth legion.
2. Storms followed such as to force the enemy to remain in camp and prevent (190, note 2) our men from foraging.
3. Observing that the enemy had halted, Caesar pointed out to his men how easily they could defeat the enemy if they attacked them vigorously from all sides.
4. The messengers, sent by Caesar to discover what the enemy were doing, reported that infantry and cavalry were being collected and pointed out what a grand opportunity our men had of taking the town if they crossed the river at once.
5. Suspecting that the enemy would attack the camp in the night-time, Caesar sent three cohorts to prevent them from crossing the bridge.

EXERCISE XVI

Caesar iv, 35

A

1. Although Caesar saw that the enemy had been routed, still he knew that they would escape danger by their speed.
2. The legions were posted in line of battle before the camp.
3. The same thing happened on this day as had happened on previous days.
4. The enemy will not be able to withstand the assault of our men long.
5. Quite a few of them were slain. We will slay a large number of them. He had been slain. He slew him with his own hand.
6. They said that quite a large number of them had been slain.
7. After slaying quite a number, they set fire to all their buildings.
8. He knew that many had escaped. He thought that their leader would escape.
9. After pursuing them for ten miles, our cavalry saw that the infantry were not able to reach the top of the hill, and returned to camp.

B

Oratio Obliqua: H. L., 189, 8, Note · R. C., 408.

Final Clauses: H. L., 197, 1: 232, 3: R. C., 380.

Consecutive Clauses: H. L., 203: R. C., 371.

Although Caesar saw that, if the enemy were defeated, they would escape into the woods and marshes, nevertheless, having assembled his officers, he announced that he would engage the enemy on the following day. As soon as the battle commenced, the enemy became aware that they could not bear up against the assault of our legions, and immediately fled. Caesar sent all the cavalry to pursue them, and ordered the infantry to follow closely. The enemy, however, being well acquainted with the locality,¹ got out of reach so quickly that our men killed very few of them. Accordingly, after burning all their villages and devastating their fields, they returned to camp.

EXERCISE XVII

Caesar iv, 36

A

1. The hostages, sent by the enemy to Caesar, arrived in camp on the following day.
2. Caesar ordered the rest of the hostages to be brought to the continent.
3. Caesar did not wish to remain longer in Britain, because his ships were weak, and winter was near at hand.
4. At last, having obtained suitable weather for sailing, he ordered all to go on board the ships.
5. All the ships reached the coast of Gaul in safety, but all were not able to reach the same harbor.
6. They reported that two merchantmen had not been able to reach the same harbor as the rest.
7. He demanded a large number of hostages from them, and ordered them to bring grain into the camp.
8. Caesar ordered his lieutenant to send the hostages, given by the enemy, to the continent.

EXERCISE XVIII

Caesar iv, 37

A

1. Caesar landed about three hundred soldiers from these ships. ▲
thousand soldiers landed.
2. They immediately proceeded into camp.

¹ The places (being) well known: Abl. Abs.

2. At the time of his departure to Britain, Caesar left the Morini at peace.
4. But being inspired by the hope of plunder, they surrounded our men on all sides.
5. Lay down your arms if you do not wish to be killed.
6. Our men at once formed a circle and assumed the defensive.
7. Soon, however, about six thousand of the enemy assembled.
8. When this was reported to Caesar, he sent all the cavalry from the camp to the support of his men.
9. Meanwhile our men were able to withstand the assault of the enemy, and fought very valiantly for more than two hours.
10. They slew quite a number of the enemy. Very few of our men were slain.
11. After our cavalry came in sight, the enemy threw away their arms and fled.

B

Cum narrative: H. L., 262, 4; 204, 3, 4; R. O., 397.

Virtual, O. O.

1. When the three hundred soldiers, who had landed from these ships, were hastening into camp, suddenly the cavalry of the Morini surrounded them and ordered them to surrender if they wished to save their lives.
2. After our men had fought very valiantly for more than two hours and had killed quite a number of the enemy, Caesar was informed that about six thousand had surrounded the seventh legion and were hurling javelins upon it from all sides.

EXERCISE XIX

Caesar iv, 88

A

1. On the following day those legions, which had been brought back from Britain, were sent under Titus Labienus against the Morini.
2. They had availed themselves of the marshes as a place of refuge the previous summer.
3. After devastating all the fields and burning the buildings, the legions returned to Caesar.
4. The Menapii will all hide in the densest woods.
5. Caesar had established the winter quarters of two legions in the country of the Belgae.
6. Hostages were sent by only two states from Britain.
7. The Morini will betake themselves into the marshes.
8. Many states came into the power of Labienus.
9. Since all their crops were cut down, the Morini were willing to give hostages to Caesar.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



B

Substantive Clauses of Purpose: H. L., 239; 240 · R. O., 424.

Cum narrative: H. L., 204, 3, 4: R. O., 397.

Qui Final: H. L., 232, 2: R. C., 388.

Oratio Obliqua: H. L., 269: R. C., 408.

1. Officers were sent to superintend the construction of a large number of ships.
2. He commanded his officers to see that all the materials, that were necessary for repairing the ships, were brought from Spain.
3. Caesar told his men that, unless more ships were built, they could not be taken back to Gaul.
4. The enemy were told that, unless hostages were given by the appointed day, our general would send cavalry to ravage their territory.
5. On their arrival at the larger camp, they learned that the cavalry, which had been sent into the territory of the Remi for the purpose of plundering and devastating, had not yet returned.
6. On learning that sufficient ships for transporting the army had been built, he departed at once for the sea-coast.

EXERCISE XXI

Caesar v, 2

A

1. These transactions were quickly concluded.
2. He will set out for the army.
3. The ships will be able to be launched within a few days.
4. He commended those who had been in charge of the work.
5. He left what he considered a sufficient force to perform these operations.
6. He had learned that all would assemble at Port Itius.
7. Owing to the wonderful enthusiasm of the soldiers the ships were all launched within a few days.
8. When this fact was reported to him, he at once set out in person with three legions ready for action into the territory of the Treviri because he heard that they would not obey him.

B

Cum narrative: H. L., 204, 3, 4: R. C., 397.

Indirect Question: H. L., 200: R. O., 362.

Clause with quin: H. L., 247, 4

1. On his return to the army, he found that all the ships were able to be launched.
2. The ships were not far from being able to be launched within a few days.

3. He pointed out what he wished to be done. He asked the officers how many ships had been built.
4. He learned from merchants in what harbor he could most easily disembark the soldiers.
5. When he learned that his lieutenant had left camp with three hundred horse, he himself returned to Hither Gaul.

EXERCISE XXII

Caesar v, 3

A

1. We have shown above that this state is by far the strongest of all Gaul in cavalry.
2. Two chiefs were at the head of this state, of whom, one was very friendly to Caesar, the other was collecting forces of cavalry and infantry preparatory to engaging in war.
3. As soon as the legions arrived, this chief wished to come to Caesar and promise to continue loyal.
4. All who on account of their age were not able to bear arms were concealed in the Ardennes wood.
5. Many chiefs, alarmed at the arrival of Caesar and the legions, began to fear for their own interests.
6. I did not wish to leave my people and come to you because the common people through thoughtlessness wished to desert the friendship of the Roman people.
7. The state is under my control, and if you will allow me I shall come to you in the camp and intrust my fortunes and those of the state to your honor.

B

'as soon as': *H. L.*, 259, 4: *R. C.*, 119.

'after': *H. L.*, 259, 4: *R. C.*, 119.

quoniam, cum, 'since': *H. L.*, 252, 2, 3: *R. C.*, 307.

Clauses with verbs of 'fearing': *H. L.*, 242; 243.

quo Final: 233, 4.

O.O.: 265; 269, 8: *R. C.*, 408.

1. As soon as the chiefs of this state learned that Caesar and the legions had arrived, they sent ambassadors to assure him that they would continue loyal, and to report what the Treviri were doing.

2. After some chiefs had informed Caesar that Indutiomarus was gathering forces of cavalry and infantry, the latter, fearing that Caesar would put him to death, came to him to intreat (him) to spare him.
3. He said that he was afraid that they would not be able to carry on war longer.
4. Fearing that the soldiers would not be able to cross the river on foot, he sent workmen ahead to build a bridge that he might more quickly reach the camp of the enemy.

EXERCISE XXIII

Caesar v, 4

A

1. Though all preparations had been made for a war in Britain, he was forced to spend the summer among the Treviri.
2. Why were those statements made? Why did he order the chief to come to him?
3. The two hundred hostages, which he had ordered to be brought to him, arrived on the following day.
4. It was of great importance that hostages should be given.
5. He perceived that this chief had very great influence among his people.
6. He was aware that Caesar wished to go to Britain this summer.
7. They were aware that this could not be done.

B

Indirect Question: H. L., 200: R. C., 362.

Ne Final: H. L., 233, 5: R. C., 424.

Oratio Obliqua: H. L., 265: R. C., 408.

Substantive Clauses of Purpose: H. L., 239; 240: R. C., 484.

1. Although Caesar was aware why Dumnorix had said that he did not wish to come to him, nevertheless, to avoid being forced to remain in Gaul all summer, he ordered him to bring two hundred hostages to him.
2. He urged this chief to continue loyal and announce to his people that Caesar would return as soon as possible.
3. Inasmuch as all preparations had been made for a campaign in Britain, he thought that it was of great importance to go to the island this summer.
4. He knew why Dumnorix was summoning the chiefs to him and urging them to remain in Gaul.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of
human knowledge in
797,885 volumes

Instant access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

5. Alarmed by the approach of Caesar, the chiefs came to him, and promised to go with him to the island.
6. They saw that they would not obtain this request.
7. They knew that Caesar would not dare to kill these chiefs before the eyes of the Gauls.
8. They told their people that Caesar would take all the chiefs over to Britain, and put them to death there.
9. Several reported to Caesar that the Gauls were carrying out these plans with one common purpose.

B

Virtual O.O. : H. L., 253, 6 : R. C., 408.

Posteaquam, 'after' : H. L., 259, 4 : R. C., 119.

Substantive Clauses of Purpose : H. L., 239 ; 240 : R. C., 424.

1. He begged of Caesar to allow him to remain in Gaul, because (as he said) he did not wish to leave his people, and he was afraid of the sea.
2. After he saw that he would not obtain his request to be left behind, he began to summon the other chiefs and urge them not to set out along with Caesar.
3. To this was added the fact that they did not dare to leave the camp lest Caesar should send cavalry to capture them and then put them to death.
4. They knew that Caesar, being afraid that these chiefs would stir up all the Gauls against him, had decided to take Dumnorix especially with him.

EXERCISE XXVI

Caesar v, 7

A

1. These facts were soon ascertained through scouts.
2. This wind was accustomed to hinder navigation.
3. Our men were not accustomed to go on board ships in the night-time.
4. We shall ascertain all their plans.
5. He ordered the cavalry and infantry to go aboard at midnight.
6. If he does not obey, kill him.
7. I am a free man and of a free state.
8. According to orders they killed the man.
9. The cavalry will advance ; the infantry will return to Caesar.
10. He returns. He returned. They said he would not return.

The Gerundive: H. L., 187; 188: R. C., 448-450.

11. We must ascertain these things. We must advance with all our forces.
12. All his plans must be discovered. A large part of the cavalry must be sent to overtake him.
13. This chief must be checked. The other had to be put to death.

Participles: H. L., 152-158: R. C., 271-273; 261, 312.

14. Having advanced; having delayed; having obtained suitable weather; having been sent; thinking; on being called back; shouting; having been killed.

Ablative Absolutes: H. L., 159-160: R. C., 304.

15. Having ascertained all his plans; without my knowledge; without our knowledge; a large part of the cavalry having been sent forward; in my absence; in our absence; in the presence of Caesar; in the presence of the consuls; while the minds of all were engaged.

B

1. Thinking that the cavalry would soon return, they ordered the soldiers to prepare for an attack on the enemy's camp.
2. Caesar took pains not only to ascertain all their plans, but also to collect as large forces as possible.
3. When the soldiers had gone aboard the ships, the chiefs in a body began to leave the camp for home.
4. After advancing about five miles, they suddenly turned back again, and seeing that our men had not yet landed from the ships, they made a fierce attack on our camp, and put the cavalry to flight.

EXERCISE XXVII

Caesar v, 8

A

1. Three legions and two thousand cavalry were left with Labienus on the continent.
2. He was unable to reach that part of the island where he had found a suitable harbor the previous year.
3. The endurance of the soldiers was very commendable.
4. The ships were not able to hold their course.
5. Caesar learned from captives that large bands of the enemy had assembled at this place.
6. Terrified by the large number of ships, the barbarians had concealed themselves in the uplands.
7. Leaving a large number of cavalry to guard the camp, they crossed the river and hastened into the territory of the Remi.

B

1. Thinking Labienus to be a suitable person, he left him on the continent to defend the camp and build ships and ascertain how large forces the enemy were gathering.
2. Setting out from the camp at daylight, he came up to the baggage-train of the enemy about mid-day, and knowing that their cavalry were still five miles distant, he sent one legion to seize the heights and prevent auxiliaries from coming to their aid.
3. As we have shown above, the Remi were coming to the aid of their neighbors, but hearing that these had been defeated by Caesar, they turned back and sought refuge in the forests.

EXERCISE XXVIII

Caesar v, 9

A

1. Caesar at once landed the army and chose a suitable place for a camp.
2. The soldiers landed from the ships at daybreak.
3. The cavalry were landed a little later.
4. Ten cohorts and two hundred cavalry were left to guard the camp.
5. The enemy's forces had encamped on the heights.
6. The ships were left on an open shore.
7. Our men tried to keep the enemy from getting inside the fortifications.
8. The soldiers of these two legions made a fierce attack and drove the enemy out of the camp.
9. With trifling loss our men withstood the assault of the enemy for more than three hours and killed quite a large number of them.
10. Caesar did not allow his men to leave the camp.
11. Caesar was not able to pursue the fleeing enemy further because the cavalry had not been able to hold their course and reach the island.
12. No time was left for fortifying the camp.

B

Ubi, "when": *H. L.*, 259, 4: *R. C.*, 119.

Indirect Question: *H. L.*, 200: *R. C.*, 362.

Qui Final: *H. L.*, 232, 2: *R. C.*, 424.

1. When Caesar learned through scouts that the forces of the enemy had encamped on a high hill, he sent his lieutenant to find out by what route he could most easily and quickly reach them.
2. He left two cohorts to serve as a guard for the bridge.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



6. The legions returned to the same place from which they had set out.
7. After beaching the ships and strongly fortifying the camp, these two legions returned to the hills.
8. Three cohorts and two hundred horse were left to guard the ships.
9. The territory of this chief was eighty miles distant from the sea.
10. They will place him in command of the legion.
11. This man's brother had been in command of two legions.

B

When Caesar learned that so many ships had been lost, he concluded that it was not safe for his men to advance farther into the enemy's country. Accordingly the legions and cavalry were recalled, and he himself returned to the seacoast as fast as he could. On his arrival there, he at once gave instructions to his officers to build as many ships as possible, and warned them not to allow the soldiers to go outside the fortifications. Since he knew that very large forces of Britons had assembled there, he was afraid lest they should make an attack on our camp when he himself was absent.

EXERCISE XXXI

Caesar v, 15

A

1. Our cavalry engaged in a fierce battle with the cavalry and charioteers of the enemy.
2. When the cavalry and charioteers were routed, the infantry fled into the woods and hills.
3. After routing their infantry, our men pursued the charioteers too far and lost some of their own men.
4. While the enemy were off their guard, our men suddenly rushed out of the camp.
5. The enemy made a fierce attack upon those who were posted on sentry duty before the camp.
6. Two cohorts were sent as a reinforcement to our men.
7. All our men got back to the camp in safety.
8. Inasmuch as our men were terrified by these unusual tactics, the enemy very boldly burst through our line.
9. Two military tribunes were among the slain in that engagement.

B

Consecutive Clauses: H. L., 203; R. C., 371.

Conditional Clauses: H. L., 249; 250; R. C., 477-478.

1. Our cavalry engaged so fiercely in battle with the enemy's cavalry that two thousand of the latter were slain and the rest driven into the woods and hills.

2. Our men would not have lost so many of their number if they had not pursued so eagerly.
3. If two cohorts had not been sent up as a reinforcement, the enemy would not have been defeated.
4. If Caesar defeats the enemy, they will escape into the woods.
5. If the enemy should take up their position on that hill, Caesar would attack them.
6. If our men had not been so terrified, the enemy would not have got off in safety.
7. If they make an attack on those posted before the camp, they will easily win a victory.
8. Our men were so terrified by the horses and chariots of the enemy, that they did not fight as boldly as usual.

EXERCISE XXXII

Caesar v, 16

A

1. The battle took place in front of the camp.
2. Our men could not pursue the retreating enemy far.
3. They will not dare to go far away from the standards.
4. The enemy sometimes retreated purposely.
5. Our men advanced across the marsh at great risk.
6. They tried to draw our men away from the legions.
7. It was their custom to leap down from the chariots and fight on foot.
8. They will never fight in close order and will relieve one another in turn.
9. Our men being weary were not able to defeat the fresh and vigorous (troops of the) enemy.
10. Shall we contend in unequal combat?
11. Did not the enemy leap down from their chariots?

B

Causal Clauses: H. L., 252, 1, 2: R. C., 397.

Repeated Acts in the Past: H. L., 263, 8: R. C., 119.

Conditional Clauses: H. L., 249; 250: R. C., 477-478.

1. Caesar perceived that our men fought at great risk, because the enemy sometimes retreated purposely, in order that they might draw our men away from the legions.
2. Whenever our men departed from the standards, the enemy would attack them more boldly.
3. The enemy used to leap down from their chariots, whenever they drew off our men a little from the standards.
4. If our men had been able to pursue the enemy with cavalry, they would have slain a great number of them.

5. If our men dare to leave the standards, the charioteers will try to surround them.
6. If the enemy would not retreat purposely, our men would soon defeat them.

EXERCISE XXXIII

Caesar v, 17

A

1. On the following day; on the day before; at mid-day; in the morning; at midnight; in the previous summer.
2. For the purpose of plundering and foraging; an opportunity of sending hostages; for the purpose of freeing themselves, (1) ad; (2) causa; a reason for departing; an opportunity of rallying—of halting—of leaping down from chariots; an end of pursuing.
3. At daybreak our men will take up their position on the top of the hill.
4. The enemy soon began to attack our cavalry and more fiercely than on the day before.
5. Three legions and all the cavalry were sent by Caesar for the purpose of devastating.
6. The enemy made a fierce attack and our men were driven from the hill.
7. Trusting to the support of the infantry, the cavalry drove the enemy from the hills, on which they had taken up their position the previous day.
8. Auxiliaries will assemble from all sides.
9. Caesar will assemble auxiliaries from all the states.
10. We engaged the enemy with all our forces.

B

Consecutive Clauses: H. L., 236: R. C., 371.

Cum, meaning since: H. L., 204, 3: R. C., 397.

Dum, Quoad, meaning until: H. L., 259, 7.

Cum, narrative: H. L., 262, 4: R. C., 397.

1. Since we see that the infantry are following closely, we shall not stop pursuing the enemy nor shall we give them any opportunity of halting, until we drive them out of our territory.
2. Since our men gave the enemy no opportunity of rallying, a large number of them were slain.
3. When the enemy had made a fierce attack on our legions, and had killed quite a number of them, they leaped down from their chariots, and drove our men in headlong flight.
4. Our men were so hard pressed by the enemy's cavalry, that Caesar sent the tenth legion to their support.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of
human knowledge in
797,885 volumes

Instant access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

7. Caesar did not allow his men to go away far from the line of the legions.
8. We shall not allow you to harm our neighbors.
9. We shall do harm to the enemy's lands. They have injured us.

B

Repeated Acts in the Past: H. L., 263, 8: R. C., 119,

Substantive Clauses of Result: H. L., 244, 1: R. C., 424

1. Whenever our cavalry withdrew a little from the road, they would hide in woody places.
2. Whenever Caesar sent cavalry ahead to plunder and forage, they would send charioteers against them from the woods.
3. The result of this was (244, 1 (b)) that our men did not go far away from the line of the legions.
4. The result of this was that the soldiers could not do the enemy much harm by devastating their fields.
5. When Caesar saw that his cavalry were engaging with the enemy's cavalry at great risk, he did not allow them to advance farther.

EXERCISE XXXVI

Caesar v, 20

A

1. In the meantime this tribe, which was the strongest in that district, sends ambassadors to Caesar.
2. One chief had come to him on the continent.
3. His father had for a long time held sovereign power in that state.
4. They will surrender to him. He surrendered to me. Many surrendered.
5. They promise to surrender to him and obey his orders.
6. They will promise to send ambassadors.
7. Caesar protected this chief and sent him into the state.
8. He was long at the head of this state.
9. They will be in command of this legion.
10. He will demand forty hostages from them.
11. They very quickly carried out his orders.
12. They sent the required number of hostages and corn for the army.

B

Substantive Clauses of Purpose: H. L., 239 ; 240 ; R. C., 424

Qui Finis: H. L., 232, 2 ; R. C., 424

Dum, while: H. L., 269, 5 ; R. C., 273.

1. While Caesar is marching into the territory of this tribe, this young man, whose father had long held sovereign power in this state, came to our camp.
2. He said that his father had been killed by Cassivelaunus, who was secretly gathering forces in order to drive the Romans out of that district.
3. They intreated Caesar to protect them and send an army into that district to prevent the enemy from destroying their towns.
4. Caesar sent a young man into the state to be at its head and hold the sovereign power.
5. They were advised to send the requisite number of hostages and at once surrender to Caesar.

EXERCISE XXXVII

Caesar v, 21

A

1. They had already surrendered to him. Many promised to surrender.
2. Embassies will be sent. Embassies had been sent.
3. Their town was not far distant from our camp.
4. Into this town, which was no more than three miles distant, a very large number of people had assembled.
5. They are assembling. We will assemble. Many had assembled.
6. This place was fortified with a rampart and trench.
7. They were in the habit of assembling at this place for the purpose of avoiding an attack.
8. He set out there immediately with two legions.
9. The place was admirably fortified both naturally and artificially.
10. After delaying a short time, the enemy fled into the woods and marshes.
11. They reported that the place was splendidly fortified.
12. Word was brought that a large number had been caught in flight and killed.

B

Although Caesar found the place strongly fortified, nevertheless he determined to assault it from two quarters. As soon as the legions had been drawn up in front of the walls, the enemy saw that they could not long withstand the assault of our men and at once rushed out of another part of the town. From those, who were captured in flight, Caesar learned that there was a fortified town about three miles distant and that many had fled there so as to avoid (233, 5) being captured and put to death.

EXERCISE XXXVIII

Caesar v, 22

A

1. Four kings held sway over these districts.
2. They collected all their forces, and attacked the naval camp unexpectedly.
3. Our men made a sally, killed a large number of them, even took their leader prisoner, and brought back their own men in safety.
4. We returned to the camp in safety.
5. They will send ambassadors to treat for surrender.
6. Since so many losses had been sustained, and his territory had been devastated, he determined to at once surrender.
7. Alarmed by the sudden arrival of our army, they threw away their arms and fled.
8. Caesar decided to spend the winter in Gaul.
9. He was aware that the enemy would attack the naval camp.
10. He was informed that they had collected all their forces.
11. When news of this battle reached them, the chiefs decided to surrender.

B

1. On their arrival at the camp, they decided on an immediate assault.
2. Since they were aware that Caesar was anxious to return to the continent, they determined to collect all their forces, and not allow our men to leave the place.
3. He decided how many hostages they should give, and where they should send them.
4. The lieutenants issued orders to their men not to leave the camp.
5. These chiefs advised their neighbors not to give hostages to Caesar, since they knew that he could not stay much longer on the island.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



SIGHT TRANSLATION

Introduction

BOOK I

Before resigning his consulship at the end of 59 B.C., Caesar was invested with proconsular power for five years over the two Gauls and over Illyricum. The Gauls were always a turbulent people, torn by factions and dissensions, and were also a constant menace to the Romans of the Province (*Provincia*) which occupied the southern part of the Rhone valley. The dangers, however, which threatened the Romans at this time did not come so much from the Gauls, as from two other quarters, namely, from the Helvetii, a tribe which occupied what is now Switzerland, and from the German chief Ariovistus.

The events in *B. I* naturally fall into two divisions :

- (1) The campaign against the Helvetii : chap. 1-30 ;
- (2) The campaign against Ariovistus : chap. 31 to end.

The Helvetii were old foes of the Romans. In 107 B.C. they had joined forces with the Cimbri and had defeated the Romans. The latter were fully aware that this might happen a second time. As early as 61 B.C. news reached Rome of the intended migration of the Helvetii, but their departure was delayed by the death of their leader, Orgetorix. At last in 58 B.C. they made full preparations for setting out from their homes and moving into southwestern Gaul. They gathered provisions, burned their villages, and with their whole population were on their way to the rich plains of Aquitania. Of the two routes which they might take, the more difficult lay through the territories of the Sequani; the other, easier and more direct, was through the Roman *Provincia*. The Helvetii decided to go by the latter route, and by the end of March were already starting on their journey. Within a week Caesar was at Geneva (*Genava*), levied an army in the *Provincia* and broke down the bridge over the Rhine. He thus hemmed in the Helvetii between Mt. Jura and the Lake of Geneva. Checked by works that Caesar constructed, they turned into the territory of the Sequani, who allowed them to pass; and they then attempted to enter the territory of the Haedui. The Haedui had been

friendly to the Romans, and Caesar, deciding to defend his allies, cut to pieces one canton of the Helvetii. Caesar was, however, hampered by lack of provisions. The Haedui had promised grain but it had not yet arrived, and they were constantly putting off Caesar by fair promises which naturally aroused his suspicions. He soon found out that politics were at the bottom of this delay. The Haeduan state was torn by rival parties, one led by Dumnorix, and the other by his brother Divitiacus, a high official. Caesar, for the present, reprimanded Dumnorix, and provisions were obtained. Finally Caesar overtook the Helvetii and signally defeated them at Bibracte (*Autun*).

After the defeat of the Helvetii, the Haedui invited Caesar to assist them in driving out the Germans under Ariovistus. Two factions stirred up Gaul, one led by the Haedui, friendly to Rome, the other headed by the Arverni and Sequani, opposed to Rome. The two latter tribes had invited Ariovistus, a German chief, to assist them in the conquest of Gaul. After fruitless negotiations between Caesar and Ariovistus, the two armies met near *Bade*, and Ariovistus was defeated.

Gaul and its divisions (*B. I, 1*).

Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres; quarum unam incolunt¹ Belgae, aliam Aquitani, tertiam, qui ipsorum lingua Celtae, nostrā Galli appellantur. Hi omnes linguā, institutis, legibus inter se differunt. Gallos ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen, a Belgis Matrona² et Sequana³ dividit. Horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, propterea quod a cultu⁴ atque humanitate⁵ provinciae longissime absunt, minimeque ad eos mercatores saepe⁶ comitant⁷ atque ea, quae ad effeminandos animos⁸ pertinent, important; proximique sunt Germanis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā de causā Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos virtute praecedunt, quod fere cotidianis⁹ proeliis cum Germanis contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eos¹⁰ prohibent, aut ipsi in eorum finibus bellum gerunt.

¹inhabit. ²the Marne. ³the Seine. ⁴mode of life. ⁵civilization. ⁶minimē saepe = very seldom. ⁷go, resort. ⁸to weaken their courage. ⁹daily. ¹⁰the Germans.

II

Orgetorix, chief of the Helvetii, persuades his countrymen to leave their homes (B. I, 2).

Apud Helvetios longe nobilissimus et ditissimus fuit Orgetorix. Is, Marco Messalā et Marco Pisone consulibus, regni cupiditate inductus, conjurationem¹ nobilitatis fecit et civitati persuasit ut de suis finibus cum omnibus copiis exirent: (dixit) perfacile esse, cum virtute omnibus praestarent, totius Galliae imperio potiri. Id hoc facilius eis persuasit, quod undique loci naturā Helvetii continentur²: unā ex³ parte flumine Rheno, latissimo atque altissimo, qui agrum Helvetiorum a Germanis dividit: alterā ex parte monte Jura altissimo, qui est inter Sequanos et Helvetios; tertiā, lacu Lemanno et flumine Rhodano, qui Provinciam nostram ab Helvetiis dividit.

¹league, in which the members swear fidelity to each other (con, together, and jūrō, swear). ²are confined by the character of their country. ³one

III

Caesar overtakes a part of the Helvetii and defeats them (B. I, 12).

Flumen est Arar¹, quod per fines Haeduorum et Sequanorum in Rhodanum influit, incredibili lenitate ita ut oculos in utram partem² fluat judicari non possit. Id Helvetii ratibus ac lintribus junctis transibant. Ubi per exploratores Caesar certior factus est, tres jam copiarum partes Helvetios id flumen transduxisse, quartam vero partem citra flumen Ararim reliquam esse, de³ tertia vigilia cum legionibus tribus e castris profectus ad eam partem pervenit quae nondum flumen transierat. Eos impeditos et inopinantes⁴ aggressus magnam eorum partem concidit⁵: reliqui fugae sese mandaverunt atque in proximas silvas abdiderunt.

¹the Saône. ²direction. ³in the course of. ⁴off their guard. ⁵concidō, ere, -cidi, -cisum, cut to pieces.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of
human knowledge in
797,885 volumes

Instant access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

quid sui consilii sit ostendit. Ipse de quarta vigilia eodem itinere, quo hostes ierant, ad eos contendit, equitatumque omnem ante se mittit. Publius Considius, qui rei militaris peritissimus habebatur⁷ et in exercitu Lucii Sullae et postea in Marci Crassi fuerat cum exploratoribus praemittitur.

¹considō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum, encamp. ²character. ³ascent. ⁴after. ⁵guides. ⁶ridge. ⁷was considered.

VI

Caesar prepares for battle with the Helvetii (*B. I, 24*).

Postquam id animadvertit¹, suas copias Caesar in proximum collem subducit², equitatumque qui sustineret³ hostium impetum misit. Ipse interim in colle medio triplicem aciem instruxit legionum quattuor veteranarum⁴, ita uti⁵ supra se in summo jugo duas legiones, quas in Gallia citeriore proxime conscripserat⁶, et omnia auxilia collocaret⁷, ac totum montem hominibus compleret⁸; interim sarcinas⁹ in unum locum conferri et eum ab his qui in superiore acie constiterant¹⁰ muniri jussit. Helvetii cum omnibus suis carris¹¹ secuti impedimenta in unum locum contulerunt; ipsi confertissimā¹² acie, rejecto¹³ nostro equitatu et phalange¹⁴ facta, sub primam nostram aciem successerunt¹⁵.

¹animadvertō, -ere, -verti, -versum, notice. ²lead up. ³sustineō, -ēre, -tinui, -tentum, check. ⁴veterānus, -a, -um, veteran. ⁵so that (uti = ut) join with collocāret. ⁶con-scribō, enrol. ⁷place. ⁸com-pleō, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētum, fill. ⁹sarcina, -ae, baggage carried by individual soldiers = packs; impedimenta, baggage of legion not carried by the soldiers. ¹⁰con-sistō, -sistere, -stiti, no sup., take up position. ¹¹carrus, i-, cart. ¹²confertus, -a, -um, dense, closely crowded. ¹³re-jiciō, -jicere, -jēci, -jectum, drive back, repel. ¹⁴phalanx, phalangis, F., solid mass in close order. ¹⁵succēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum; advance.

BOOK II

Belgic Campaign, 57 B.C.

The campaign of 57 B.C. is marked by the signal defeat of the tribes of the Belgic confederacy. The Belgae occupied northeastern Gaul, i.e., the country between the Sequana (*Seine*) and the Rhenus (*Rhine*), roughly speaking, part of France bordering on Belgium, the whole of Belgium, and part of Holland west of the Rhine. In the time of Caesar that part of Europe was covered by extensive swamps and impenetrable forests. It was, however, peopled by a race fond of freedom and, therefore, difficult to conquer. The tribes inhabiting this district were rather of Germanic than of Celtic origin.

Caesar estimates the number of the fighting force of the enemy at about 250,000 men, while his own force opposed to them, numbering eight¹ legions, would hardly be more than one tenth that number.

In a hurried march from Cisalpine Gaul, Caesar set out against them. Only the Remi were friendly and these were attacked by the other tribes but were relieved by Caesar. Advancing to the Axona (*Aisne*) he left six cohorts to guard the bridge. He occupied successively Bibron, Noviodunum and Bratuspantium. After these towns were captured, he fought one of his severest battles against the Nervii, near the river Sabis, in which the defeat of the Roman army was prevented by the personal courage and coolness of the general. Finally the Aduatuci were reduced to submission.

¹ In the year 58 B.C. in his first campaign against the Helvetii and Ariovistus, Caesar had six legions: the 10th he formed in Gaul: the 11th and 12th he enrolled in the *Provincia*: three he obtained from Aquileia in northeastern Gallia Cisalpina, the 7th, the 8th, the 9th; in 57 B.C. he enrolled the 13th and the 14th in Cisalpine Gaul.

VII

Caesar marches against the Belgae (*B. II, 2*).

His nuntiis litterisque commotus¹ Caesar duas legiones in citeriore Gallia novas conscripsit, et inita² aestate in interiorem Galliam qui deduceret Quintum Pedium legatum misit. Ipse, cum primum pabuli³ copia esse inciperet⁴ ad exercitum venit. Dat negotium⁵ Senonibus reliquisque Gallis qui finitimi Belgis erant, uti⁶ ea quae apud eos gerantur cognoscant seque de

his rebus certiozem faciant. Hi constanter omnes nuntiaverunt manūs cogi⁷, exercitum in unum locum conduci. Tum vero dubitandum⁸ non existimavit quin ad eos proficiaceretur. Re frumentariā comparatā castra movet, diebusque circiter quindecim ad fines Belgarum pervenit.

¹com-movēō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, influence. ²in-eō, -ire, -il (-ivi), -itum, enter into: perf. part. pass.; translate: "in the beginning of summer." ³pabulum, -i, fodder. ⁴in-cipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, begin. ⁵tank. ⁶uti -ut. ⁷cōgō, cōgere, cōēgi, coactum, muster. ⁸supply sibi esse: "that he should delay."

VIII

Caesar marches to relieve the Remi (B. II, 7).

Eo¹ de² mediā nocte Caesar iisdem ducibus usus qui nuntii ab Iccio³ venerant, Numidas et Cretas sagittarios⁴ et funditores⁵ Baleares subsidio⁶ oppidanis⁷ mittit; quorum adventu et Remis studium propugnandi⁸ accessit⁹, et hostibus eadem de causa spes potiundi¹⁰ oppidi discessit. Itaque paulisper¹¹ apud oppidum morati¹² agrosque Remorum depopulati, omnibus vicis¹³ aedificiisque quos adire poterant incensis, ad castra Caesaris omnibus copiis contenderunt et ab millibus passuum minus duobus¹⁴ castra posuerunt; quae castra, ut fumo¹⁵ atque ignibus significabatur,¹⁶ amplius millibus passuum octo in latitudinem patebant.

¹to that place, thither. ²after. ³a nobleman of the Remi. ⁴Crēs Crētis, a Cretan, a native of Crete. ⁵sagittārius, -i, bowman. ⁶funditor, -ōris, slinger. ⁷subsidium, -i, help. ⁸oppidān-us, -i (pl.) townspeople (of Bibrōn). ⁹eagerness for a defence. ¹⁰ac-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, cessum, come to: trans. was inspired in the Remi. ¹¹gerundive: potior, potiri, potitus sum, gain. ¹²for a short time. ¹³moror, -āri, -ātus, delay. ¹⁴vicus, -i, village. ¹⁵less than two miles off. ¹⁶fūmus, -i, smoke. ¹⁷significō, show.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



exercitati, quid fieri oporteret ipsi sibi praescribere¹³ poterant; et quod ab opere singulisque legionibus singulos legatos Caesar discedere nisi munitis castris vetuerat¹⁴.

¹banner. ²pro-pōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, hang out; supply fait. ³insigne, -is, N. signal. ⁴con-currō, -currere, curri, -cursum, rush. ⁵trumpet. ⁶for the purpose of seeking material for the mound. ⁷arcessō, -ere, arcessivi, arcessitum, summon. ⁸co-hortor, -hortāri, -hortātus, address. ⁹onset. ¹⁰subsidium, -i, help. ¹¹skill. ¹²experience. ¹³praescribō, -ere, -scripsi, -scriptum, give directions. ¹⁴vetō, -āre, -ui, -itum, forbid.

XI

A thanksgiving is decreed at Rome in honor of Caesar (B. II, 35).

His rebus gestis, omni Galliā pacatā,¹ tanta hujus belli ad barbaros opinio² perlata³ est uti⁴ ab his nationibus quae trans Rhenum incolent mitterentur legati ad Caesarem qui se obaides daturas, imperata facturas pollicerentur. . Quas legationes Caesar, quod in Italiam Illyricumque properabat, initā proximā aestate⁵ ad se reverti⁶ jussit. . Ipse, in Carnutes, Andes, Turonesque, quae civitates propinquae his locis erant ubi bellum gesserat, legionibus in hiberna deductis⁷, in Italiam profectus est. Ob easque res ex litteris Caesaris dies quindecim supplicatio⁸ decreta⁹ est, quod ante id tempus accidit nulli.

¹pācō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, pacify. ²impression. ³per-ferō, -ferre, -tali, -lātum, spread. ⁴uti=ut. ⁵See VII. ⁶revertor, reverti, dep. in present tense, perf. reverti, reversum, return. ⁷dē-dūcō, -dūcere, duxi, -ductum, withdraw. ⁸thanksgiving. ⁹dēcernō, -ere, -crēvi, -crētum, decree.

BOOK III (56 B.C.).

The third campaign in Gaul (56 B.C.) naturally falls into three divisions: (1) the campaign against the Alpine tribes (chapters 1-6); (2) the Venetic War (chapters 7-19); (3) the campaign against the Aquitani (chapters 20-29).

The valleys of the Alps leading to Italy were inhabited by predatory tribes who gained a scanty living by working the mines, and exacting

tolls from people passing through their lands. From the days of Hannibal to those of Caesar these wild mountaineers had been a constant menace to the Roman armies who had occasion to pass from Italy to Gaul. Already two legions under Quintus Pedius (*B. II, 2*), had been attacked. The present expedition was undertaken to strike terror into the hearts of the barbarians in order to prevent the recurrence of a similar attack.

The Veneti were a people of Brittany, in north-western France. They were a nation of hardy mariners. They were fond of freedom and adventure. Their country was rugged, rocky and precipitous, with bold headlands on which their towns were perched. To subdue them, Caesar caused a fleet to be built at the mouth of the Loire. They were finally defeated in a naval battle fought in the Bay of Quiberon.

The campaign against the Aquitani seems to have been fought simply to complete the conquest of Gaul, for they had been, so far, a peaceable people.

XII

A new route to Italy (*B. III, 1*).

Cum in Italiam proficisceretur Caesar, Servium Galbam cum legione duodecimā et parte equitatus in Veragros misit, qui ab finibus Allobrogum ad summas Alpes pertinent. Causa mittendi fuit quod iter per Alpes, quo magno cum periculo magnisque cum portoriis¹ mercatores ire consueverant, pate-
feri² volebat. Huic permisit, si opus esse³ arbitraretur, uti⁴ in eis locis legionem hiemandi causā collocaret. Galba, secundis⁵ aliquot proeliis factis castellisque⁶ compluribus eorum expugnatis, missis ad eum undique legatis obsidibusque datis et pace facta, constituit cohortes duas ibi collocare et ipse cum reliquis ejus legionis cohortibus in vico Veragrorum⁷, qui appellatur Octodurus, hiemare; qui vicus positus in valle, non magna adjectā⁸ planitie, altissimis montibus undique continetur.

¹portōrium, -i, N. (generally in plural) toll. ²pass. of pate-faciō, open. ³to be necessary. ⁴uti=ut. ⁵secund-us, -a, -um, successful. ⁶castellum, -i, N., fortress. ⁷Veragri, -ōrum, M. pl. Veragri, an Alpine tribe. ⁸adjectus, -a, -um. (perf. part. of adjiciō) used as an adj., adjacent.

XIII

The Romans saved by a sortie (B. III, 5).

Cum jam amplius horis sex continenter¹ pugnaretur, ac non solum vires² sed etiam tela nostros deficerent³, atque hostes acrius instarent⁴, languidioribusque⁵ nostris vallibus⁶ scindere⁷ et fossas complere coepissent, resque esset jam ad extremum perducta casum⁸, Publius Sextus Facius, quem Nervico proelio compluribus confectum vulneribus diximus, et item Caius Volusenus, vir et consilii magni et virtutis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque unam esse spem salutis docent, si eruptione⁹ factâ extremum auxilium¹⁰ experirentur. Itaque, convocatis centurionibus, celeriter militibus imperat ut paulisper intermitterent¹¹ proelium, ac tantummodo¹² tela missa exciperent¹³ seque ex labore reficerent; post, dato signo, ex castris erumperent atque omnem spem salutis in virtute ponerent.

¹without interruption. ²pl. of vis, strength. ³deficiō, 3, -feci, -fectum, fail. ⁴instō, 1, -stiti, -statum, press on. ⁵as our men grew feebler. ⁶palisade, rampart. ⁷scindō, -ere, scidi, scissum, tear down. ⁸and when the battle had been brought to a final crisis. ⁹eruptiō, -ōnis, sally. ¹⁰last resource. ¹¹discontinue. ¹²merely. ¹³i. e., on their shields.

KIV

Caesar's motives for making war (B. III, 10).

Erant hae difficultates belli gerendi quas supra diximus, sed multa Caesarem tamen ad id bellum incitabant¹: injuriarum retentorum equitum² Romanorum, rebellio³ facta post deditionem, defectio⁴ datis obsidibus, tot civitatum conjuratio, in primis ne⁵, hac parte⁶ neglectâ, reliquae nationes idem sibi licere⁷ arbitrarentur. Itaque cum intellegeret omnes fere Gallos novis rebus studere⁸ et ad bellum celeriter excitari,



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of
human knowledge in
797,885 volumes

Instant access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

XVI

Disastrous defeat of the Gauls (*B. III, 19*).

Locus erat castrorum editus¹ et paulatim ab imo acclivis² circiter mille passus. Huc magno cursu hostes contenderunt, ut quam minimum spatii³ ad se colligendos⁴ armandosque Romanis daretur exanimatique⁵ pervenerunt. Sabinus suos hostatus signum dat. Impeditis hostibus propter ea quae ferebant onera, subito duabus portis eruptionem fieri jubet. Factum est⁶ opportunitate loci, hostium inscientiâ ac defetigatione, virtute militum et superiorum pugnarum exercitatione, ut ne unum quidem nostrorum impetum ferrent ac statim terga verterent. Quos integris viribus milites nostri consecuti magnum numerum eorum occiderunt; reliquos equites nostri consecuti⁷ paucos reliquerunt. Civitates omnes se statim dediderunt. Nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallorum alacer ac promptus est animus, sic mollis ac minime resistens ad calamitates perferendas mens eorum est.

¹high. ²sloping. ³as little time as possible, subject of daretur. ⁴colligō, 3, -lēgi, -lectum, form into a body. ⁵out of breath. ⁶the result was. ⁷consector, 1, follow.

BOOK IV (55 B.C.)

The fourth campaign, 55 B.C., naturally falls into two divisions: (1) the campaign against the Germans: (chapters 1-19): and (2) the first expedition against Britain.

The tribes on the Gallic frontier, the Usipetes and the Tencteri, had been hard pressed by their more powerful neighbors the Suevi, and had crossed the Rhine into northern Gaul. Caesar comes forward, as he had done in the war against Ariovistus, as the defender of the Gauls. He drove back the invaders, builds a bridge, which was a marvel of engineering skill, in the incredible short space of ten days, crosses over into Germany, recrosses the Rhine and breaks down the bridge.

XVII

Customs of the Suevi (*B. IV, 1*).

Suevorum gens est longe maxima et bellicosissima Germanorum omnium. Hi centum pagos¹ habere dicuntur, ex quibus quotannis singula millia² armatorum bellandi causâ ex finibus ducunt. Reliqui, qui domi manserunt, se atque illos alunt³. Hi rursus in vicem anno post in armis sunt, illi domi remanent. Sic neque agri cultura nec ratio atque usus⁴ belli intermittitur⁵. Sed privati ac separati agri apud eos nihil est, neque longius anno remanere uno in loco colendi⁶ causâ licet. Neque multum frumento sed maximam partem lacte et pecore vivunt multumque sunt in venationibus⁷; quae res et cibi genere et cotidianâ exercitatione et libertate vitae et vires alit et immani corporum magnitudine homines efficit.

¹district, canton. ²each a thousand. ³alō, -āre, alul, altam, maintain. ⁴ratio, theory; usus, practice. ⁵is interrupted. ⁶of tilling the soil. ⁷they are much given to hunting.

XVIII

The Ubii, tributaries of the Suevi (*B. IV, 3*).

Publice¹ maximam putant esse laudem quam latissime a² suis finibus vacare agros; hac re significari magnum numerum civitatum suam vim sustinere non posse. Itaque unâ ex parte a Suevis³ circiter millia passuum sexcenta agri vacare dicuntur. Ad alteram partem succedunt⁴ Ubii quorum fuit civitas ampla atque florens ut est captus⁵ Germanorum: ei paulo sunt, quam ejusdem generis sunt ceteri, humaniores propterea quod Rhenum attingunt multumque ad eos mercatores ventitant et ipsi propter propinquitatem Gallicis sunt moribus adsuefacti.⁶ Hos cum Suevi multis saepe bellis

experti⁷ propter amplitudinem gravitatemque civitatis finibus expellere non potuissent, tamen vectigales⁸ sibi fecerunt ac multo humiliores infirmioresque redegerunt.⁹

¹as a nation. ²on the side of. ³from the country of the Suevi in one direction. ⁴come next. ⁵according to German ideas; captus, -ūs, literally, "what may be grasped." ⁶conformed. ⁷tried. ⁸tributary. ⁹redigō -ēre redēgī, redactum, render.

XIX

Fickle character of the Gauls (*B. IV, 5*).

His de rebus Caesar certior factus et infirmitatem¹ Gallorum veritus, quod sunt in consiliis capiendis mobiles² et novis plerumque rebus student, nihil his committendum³ existimavit. Est enim hoc Gallicae consuetudinis⁴ uti⁵ et viatores⁶ etiam invitos⁷ consistere cogant, et⁸ quid quisque eorum de quaque re audierit aut cognoverit quaerant; et mercatores in oppidis vulgus circumaestat⁹, quibusque ex regionibus veniant quasque ibi res cognoverint pronuntiare¹⁰ cogat. His rumoribus atque auditionibus¹¹ permoti, de summis saepe rebus consilia ineunt.

¹fickleness. ²easily influenced. ³no trust should be placed in them. ⁴this is a characteristic of the Gallic custom. ⁵uti=ut, introducing a number of result clauses in apposition with hoc. ⁶travellers. ⁷against their will. ⁸Join to quaerant. ⁹circum-aistō, -aistēre, -aisti, surround. ¹⁰tell. ¹¹hearsays.

XX

The course of the Rhine described (*B. IV, 10*).

Mosa¹ profluit² ex monte Vosego, qui est in finibus Lingonum, et parte³ quādam ex Rheno receptā quae appellatur Vacalus⁴, insulam efficit Batavorum, neque longius inde millibus passuum octoginta in Oceanum influit. Rhenus autem oritur ex Lepontiis, qui Alpes incolunt et longo spatio per fines multarum gentium⁵ citatus⁶ fertur; et ubi Oceano approquavit, in plures defluit partes⁷ multis ingentibusque



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



the Gauls possible to attack them individually before the one could lend aid to the other. The disturbance began with the murder of Tasgetius, a chief of the Carnutes who was friendly to Caesar. Then followed the attack upon the camp of Sabinus and Cotta stationed at Aduatuca, by Ambiorix, king of the Eburones. In the council of war divided councils prevailed. Cotta was for holding out till aid should come from Caesar. Sabinus was for starting out to try and reach the camp of Cicero. They were surrounded and cut to pieces, only a few escaping to carry the word to Labienus. Ambiorix by his success was able to rouse the Aduatuci, the Nervii and other tribes to attack the headquarters of Cicero. At length, after gallantly defending himself till his resources were almost exhausted, he was relieved by Caesar. By the prompt action of Caesar danger was openly averted; still the Treviri were secretly urging the Germans to aid them against the Romans. Caesar was compelled to spend the winter of 54-53 B.C. in Transalpine Gaul. He enrolled another legion, the fifteenth, in Gallia Cisalpina.

XXII

The murder of Tasgetius (*B. V. 25*).

Erant in Carnutibus summo loco natus¹ Tasgetius, cujus majores in sua civitate regnum obtinuerant. Huic² Caesar pro³ ejus virtute atque in se benevolentia, quod in omnibus bellis singulari ejus opera⁴ fuerat usus, majorum locum restituerat. Tertium jam hunc annum regnantem inimici multis palam⁵ ex⁶ civitate auctoribus⁷ interfecerunt. Defertur⁸ ea res ad Caesarem. Ille veritus, quod ad plures pertinebat⁹, ne civitas eorum deficeret¹⁰, Lucium Plancum cum legione ex Belgio celeriter in Carnutes proficisci jubet ibique hiemare, quorumque operam cognoverat Tasgetium interfectum, eos comprehensos ad se mittere. Interim ab omnibus legatis quibus legiones tradiderat¹¹ certior factus est, in hiberna parventum¹² locumque hibernis esse munitum.

¹Compare amplissimō genere nātus, xvii. ²Indirect object of restituerat. ³for. ⁴assistance. ⁵openly. ⁶in. ⁷auctor, -ōris, abettor. ⁸dēferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, is reported. ⁹per-tineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum, concern. ¹⁰dēficiō, revolt. ¹¹trādō, hand over. ¹²Supply esse cōp̄ta, that the troops had reached the winter quarters.

XXIII

Cotta opposes leaving the camp (B. V, 28).

Itaque ad consilium rem defērunt¹ magnaue inter eos existit² controversia³. Lucius Cotta compluresque tribuni militum et primorum ordinum⁴ centuriones nihil temere⁵ agendum, neque ex hibernis injussu⁶ Caesaris discedendum existimabant; quantavis⁷ copias etiam Germanorum sustineri posse munitis hibernis docebant; rem esse testimonio⁸ quod primum hostium impetum multis ultrō⁹ vulneribus illatis¹⁰ fortissime sustinuerint; re frumentaria¹¹ se non premi; interea et ex proximis hibernis et a Caesare conventura subsidia; postremo, quid esse levius aut turpius quam auctore hoste¹² de summis rebus capere consilium?

¹lay before. ²ex-sistō, -sistere, -stiti, arise. ³dispute. ⁴ordō, -inis, M., rank. ⁵rashly. ⁶without orders. ⁷no matter how great. ⁸what had happened (rem) was a proof of this. ⁹even. ¹⁰inflicted. ¹¹by a scarcity of corn. ¹²on the suggestion of an enemy.

XXIV

The Romans decide to leave their camp (B. V, 31).

Consurgitur¹ ex consilio; orant milites ne dissentione² et pertinacia³ rem in summum periculum deducant⁴; facilem esse rem, seu maneat seu proficiscantur, si modo unum omnes sentiant; contra in dissentione nullam se salutem perspicere. Res disputatione ad mediam noctem perducitur. Tandem dat Cotta permotus manus⁵; superat sententia Sabini. Pronuntiat⁶ se primā luce ituros. Consumitur vigiliis reliqua pars noctis, cum sua quisque miles circumspiceret, quid secum portare posset, quid ex instrumento⁷ hibernorum relinquere cogeretur. Primā luce ex castris proficiscuntur.

¹they rise; impersonal use of passive. ²by disagreement. ³obstinacy. ⁴cause a most perilous situation. ⁵dare manūs, yield. ⁶word is given out. ⁷equipment.

XXV

The massacre (*B. V, 37*).

Sabinus quos¹ in praesentia² tribunos militum circum se habebat et primorum ordinum centuriones se sequi jubet; et, cum propius Ambiorigem accessisset, jussus arma abjicere, imperatum facit, suisque ut idem faciant imperat. Interim dum de condicionibus³ inter se agunt longiorque ab Ambiorige instituitur sermo, paulatim circumventus interficitur. Tum vero suo more victoriam conclamant atque ululatum⁴ tollunt, impetuque in nostros facto ordines perturbant. Ibi Lucius Cotta pugnans interficitur cum maximâ parte militum. Reliqui se in castra recipiunt unde⁵ erant egressi. Ex quibus Lucius Petrosidius aquilifer cum magna multitudine hostium premeretur, aquilam intra vallum projecit, ipse pro castris fortissime pugnans occiditur. Illi aegre⁶ ad noctem oppugnationem sustinent; noctu ad unum omnes, desperata salute, se ipsi interficiunt.

¹quos...tribunos militum = eos tribunos militum quos. ²at that time. ³terms, i.e. of surrender. ⁴yell. ⁵with difficulty.

XXVI

The rival centurions (*B. V, 44*).

Erant in eâ legione fortissimi viri centuriones qui primis ordinibus¹ appropinquarent Titus Pulio et Lucius Vorens. Hi perpetuas inter se controversias² habebant uter anteferretur³ omnibusque annis⁴ de locis⁵ summis simulatibus⁶ contendebant. Ex his Pulio, cum acerrime ad munitiones pugnaretur, Quid dubitas, inquit, Vorene? Aut quem locum⁷ tuae probandae virtutis expectas? Hic dies de nostris controversiis judicabit. Haec cum dixisset, procedit extra munitiones, quaeque pars hostium confertissima est visa, in eam irrumpit⁸. Ne Vorens quidem se vallo continet sed omnium veritus



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of
human knowledge in
797,885 volumes

Instant access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

XXVIII

**News conveyed to Caesar's camp by a Gallic slave
(B. V, 45).**

Quanto erat in dies gravior atque asperior oppugnatio,¹ et maxime quod, magnā parte militum confectā vulneribus², res ad paucitatem defensorum pervenerat,³ tanto crebriores litterae nuntiique ad Caesarem mittebantur; quorum pars deprehensa in conspectu nostrorum militum cum cruciatu⁴ necabatur. Erat unus intus⁵ Nervius nomine Vertico, loco natus honesto, qui a primā obsidione ad Ciceronem perfugerat suamque fide[m] praestiterat⁶. Hic servo spe libertatis magnisque persuadet praemiis ut litteras ad Caesarem deferat⁷. Has ille in jaculo illigatas⁸ effert et Gallus inter Gallos sine ullā suspitione versatus ad Caesarem pervenit. Ab eo de periculis Ciceronis legionisque cognoscitur.

¹the fiercer and more desperate the siege became from day to day. ²worn out with wounds. ³the fighting (res) now devolved on few defenders. ⁴cruciatu[s], -us, M. torture. ⁵inside the camp. ⁶praestō, -āre, -stiti, -stitum, show. ⁷dēferō, carry. ⁸illigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tie to.

XXIX

Prompt measures of relief (B. V, 46).

Caesar acceptis litteris horā circiter undecimā diei statim nuntium ad M. Crassum quaestorem mittit, cujus hiberna aberant ab eo millia passuum viginti quinque; jubet media nocte legionem proficisci celeriterque ad se venire. Exit cum nuntio Crassa. Alterum ad Caium Fabium legatum mittit ut in Atrebatium fines legionem adducat, quā sibi scit iter faciendum. Scribit Labieno¹ si reipublicae commodo facere posset cum legione ad fines Nerviorum veniat. Reliquam partem exercitus, quod paulo aberat longius, non putat expectandam; equites circiter quadringentos ex proximis hibernis colligit².

¹supply ut; join with veniat; scribit has an analogous construction to imperat. ²colligō, -ere, -lēgi, lectum, muster.

XXX

An "armed council" of the Gauls is summoned
(B. V, 56).

Indutiomarus, ubi intellexit Nervios bellum Romanis parare neque sibi voluntariorum copias defore¹ armatum concilium indicit². Hoc more³ Gallorum est initium belli, quo⁴ lege communi omnes puberes⁵ armati convenire consueverunt; qui ex his novissimus convenit, in conspectu multitudinis omnibus cruciatibus affectus necatur. In eo concilio Cingetorigem, alterius principem factionis, generum suum, quem supra demonstravimus Caesaris secutum fidem ab eo non discessisse, hostem judicat bonaque ejus publicat⁶. His rebus confectis in concilio pronuntiat⁷ arcessitum⁸ se compluribus Galliae civitatibus; se iturum per fines Remorum eorumque agros populaturum⁹; ac priusquam id faciat¹⁰ castra Labieni oppugnaturum. Quae fieri velit¹¹ praecipit¹².

¹ = defuturas esse, fut. infin. of desum, -esse, defui, fail (with dative);
²proclaims. ³more, moris, M., custom. ⁴adv. to which. ⁵pubes, pueris, M., adult. ⁶confiscate. ⁷declare. ⁸arcesso, -ere, arcessivi, arcessitum, invite. ⁹populo, -ari, populatus sum, devastate. ¹⁰Subord. clause in O.O.; H. L., 285, 2 (b). ¹¹Indirect Question; H. L., 200, 4. ¹²praecipio, -ere, -cepi, -ceptum, inform.

XXXI

Death of Indutiomarus (B. V, 58).

Interim Indutiomarus ad castra Romana accedit atque ibi magnam partem diei consumit¹; equites Gallorum tela conjiunt et magna cum contumelia² nostros ad pugnam evocant³. Nullo ab nostris dato responso, sub vesperum⁴ dispersi ac dissipati⁵ discedunt. Subito Labienus duabus portis⁶ omnem equitatum emittit; praecipit ut, territis hostibus atque in fugam coniectis, unum omnes peterent⁷ Indutiomarum.

¹consumo, -ere, consumpsi, consumptum, spend. ²insulting language. ³challenge. ⁴towards evening; note use of sub in expression of time; sub noctem, towards night, just before nightfall; sub primam lucem, just before daybreak. ⁵in scattered and straggling bands. ⁶abl. of Route by Which; H. L., 294, 2. ⁷attack, make for.

XXXII

Death of Indutiomārus (*continued, B. V, 58*).

Interdicit Caesar ne quis¹ quem² prius vulneret quam Indutiomarum interfectum viderit, quod spatium nactum³ illum effugere nolebat; magna proponit iis qui occiderint praemia; submittit⁴ cohortes equitibus subsidio. Probat consilium hominis fortunā; et, cum unum omnes peterent, in ipso fluminis vado deprehensus Indutiomarus interficitur caputque ejus refertur in castra; redeuntes equites quos possunt consectantur⁵ atque occidunt. Hāc re cognitā, omnes quae convenerant copiae discedunt; pauloque habuit post id factum Caesar quietiorem Galliam.

¹that no one; H. L., 233, 5. ²anyone. ³nanciscor, nanciaci, nactus sum, obtain. ⁴sends. ⁵consector, -āri, -ātus sum, overtake.

BOOK VI (53 B.C.).

Early in the spring of 53 B.C. Caesar suddenly appears in the territory of the Nervii and the Menapii, whom he subdues. Meanwhile Labienus, his trusty lieutenant, defeated the Treviri, and placed Cingetorix, who had always been loyal to the Romans, in supreme power. After uniting his own forces with those of Labienus, Caesar led his army across the Rhine by a new bridge built near the modern city of *Berne*. The Suevi had mustered to oppose his advance, but subsequently withdrew to the end of their territories without coming to an engagement. Caesar takes occasion to describe the habits and customs of the Galli, their religion, and priests. He then describes the Germans, the Hercynian Wood, and the wild animals found in it. He returns to Gaul, cuts down part of the bridge, and scatters the forces of Ambiorix, chief of the Eburones. In the late summer, the Sigambri, a German tribe, cross the Rhine and attack Aduatuca (*Tongres*), where Cicero was stationed. Cicero nearly met with a severe defeat. After ravaging the country of the Eburones, Caesar holds an assembly of the Gauls at Durocortorum (*Rheims*), at which the rebellious chiefs were condemned. Acco, the leader of the rebellion among the Carnutes and Sennones, is put to death; the other condemned chieftains fled. Caesar then felt safe to go to Italy.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



afuisse⁹ existimabantur. Hac re pro suggestu¹⁰ pronuntiata, eodem die cum legionibus in Senones proficiscitur magnisque itineribus eo pervenit.

¹before winter was quite over. ²unexpectedly. ³arranged. ⁴having been proclaimed. ⁵revolt. ⁶that he might make it appear that he was postponing the whole matter. ⁷to Lutetia of the Parisii = to Paris. The council before met at Samarobriua (Amiens). ⁸neighbors. ⁹to be averse. ¹⁰suggestus, -is, tribunal, or platform.

XXXV

Caesar crosses the Rhine a second time
(B. VI, 9).

Caesar postquam ex Menapiis in Treveros v̄nit, duabus de causis Rhenum transire constituit: quarum una erat quod Germani auxilia contra se¹ Treviris miserant; altera, ne ad eos Ambiorix receptum haberet². His constitutis rebus, paulo supra³ eum locum quo ante exercitum traduxerat facere pontem instituit. Magno militum studio paucis diebus opus efficitur. Firmo in Treveris ad pontem praesidio relicto, ne quis ab his subito motus oriretur⁴, reliquas copias equitatumque traducit. Ubi, qui ante obsides dederant atque in deditionem venerant, purgandi sui⁵ causā ad eum legatos mittunt qui doceant neque auxilia ex suā civitate in Treveros missa neque ab se fidem laesam⁶: petunt atque orant⁷ ut sibi parcat, ne communi odio Germanorum innocentes pro nocentibus poenas pendant⁸; si amplius obsidum velit dari, pollicentur.

¹se = ipsum, i. e., Caesar. ²that Ambiorix might not find refuge with them. ³the former bridge was built near Bonn, 55 B.C. (B. IV, 17); the present one was built farther up the stream, near Andernach. ⁴orior, oriri, ortus sum, arise; "to prevent any sudden rising taking place among them." ⁵of clearing themselves; H. L., 167, 8. ⁶laedō, -ere, laesi, laesum, break; with fidem, to break their word. ⁷they beg and pray, i. e., they earnestly beg. ⁸pay the penalty.

XXXVI

Factions among the Gauls (*B. VI, 11*).

Quoniam ad hunc locum¹ perventum est,² non alienum³ esse videtur de Galliae Germanicaeque moribus et quo differant haec nationes inter sese proponere⁴. In Gallia non solum in omnibus civitatibus atque in omnibus pagis⁵ partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulis domibus factiones⁶ sunt: earumque factionum principes sunt, quorum ad arbitriam summa omnium rerum redeat⁷. Ita ejus rei causa antiquitas⁸ institutum esse videtur, ne quis ex plebe contra potentio-rem auxilii egeret⁹; suos enim quisque¹⁰ opprimi et circumveniri non patitur¹¹, neque, aliter¹² si faciat, ullam inter suos habeat auctoritatem.

¹place (in my narrative). ²=perveni. ³alien, out of place; literally, foreign (to my subject). ⁴to lay before (my readers)=to explain. ⁵cantons. ⁶political parties. ⁷the final decision of all matters is referred. ⁸in former times. ⁹that no one from the common people should be at a loss for aid against any one more powerful than himself. ¹⁰i.e. each party leader. ¹¹refuses to allow. ¹²otherwise.

XXXVII

Rival factions in Gaul (*B. VI, 12*).

Cum Caesar in Galliam venit, alterius factionis¹ principes erant Haedui, alterius Sequani. Hi², cum per se minus valerent,³ quod summa auctoritas antiquitas⁴ erat in Haeduis magna-que eorum erant clientelae⁵, Germanos atque Ariovistum sibi adjunxerant eosque ad se magnis jacturis⁶ pollicitationibusque⁷ perduxerant. Proeliis vero compluribus factis secundis atque omni nobilitate Haeduum interfecta, tantum potentiam antecesserant⁸ ut magnam partem clientium⁹ ab Haeduis ad se traducerent obidesque ab iis principum filios acciperent et

publice jurare cogerent nihil se contra Sequanos consilii inituros¹⁰, et partem finitimi agri per vim occupatam possiderent¹¹, Galliaeque totius principatum obtinerent.

¹factiō, -ōnis, F. political party. ²the latter. ³were not sufficiently strong of themselves, valeō, -ēre, -ul, -itum, be strong. ⁴in ancient times. ⁵clientēla, -ae, F., the relation of *patrōnus* and *cliens*: dependant. ⁶jactūra, -ae, F., sacrifice. ⁷pollicitātiō, -ōnis, F., promise. ⁸they (Sequani) so far excelled in power (the Haedui). ⁹cliens, -tis, M., dependant. ¹⁰consilium inire, to enter upon a plan, to undertake. ¹¹possideō, -ēre, possēdi, possessum, possess.

XXXVIII

Caesar supports the Aedui and Remi (B. VI, 12).

Necessitate adductus¹ Haedus Divitiacus auxilii petendi causā Romam ad senatum profectus imperfectā re² redierat. Adventu Caesaris factā commutatione³ rerum, obsidibus Haeduis redditis, veteribus clientelis restitutis, novis per Caesarem comparatis, quod hi, qui se ad eorum⁴ amicitiam aggregaverant, meliore condicione atque aequiore imperio se uti⁵ videbant, eorum gratiā dignitateque amplificatā, Sequani principatum dimiserant.⁶ In eorum locum Remi successerant⁷; quos quod adaequare⁸ apud Caesarem gratiā intellegebatur, ii qui propter veteres inimicitias nullo modo cum Haeduis conjungi poterant se Remis in clientelam dabant⁹. Hos illi diligenter tuebantur; ita novam auctoritatem tenebant. Eo tum statu res erat, ut longe principes haberentur Haedui, secundum locum dignitatis Remi obtinerent.

¹forced by necessity. ²without accomplishing his purpose. ³commūtātiō, -ōnis, F, change. ⁴i. e., the Haedui. ⁵ūtor, ūti, ūsus sum, enjoy. ⁶had been compelled to give up. ⁷succēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, succeed. ⁸supply Haeduos after adaequare, that they had rivalled the Haedui in Caesar's favor. ⁹placed themselves under the protection of the Remi; dācō, I, assign.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of
human knowledge in
797,885 volumes

Instant access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

His autem omnibus druidibus praest¹⁰ unus, qui summam inter eos habet auctoritatem. Hoc mortuo, aut, si qui ex reliquis excellit¹¹ dignitate, succedit¹², aut, si sunt plures pares, suffragio¹³ druidum; nonnunquam¹⁴ etiam armis de principatu contendunt. Hi certo anni tempore in finibus Carnutum, quae regio totius Galliae media habetur, considunt¹⁵ in loco consecrato. Huc omnes undique qui controversias¹⁶ habent conveniunt eorumque decretis iudiciisque parent. Disciplina¹⁷ in Britannia reperta atque inde in Galliam translata¹⁸ esse existimatur; et nunc qui diligentius eam rem¹⁹ cognoscere volunt plerumque illo discendi causâ proficiscuntur.

¹abide by their decision (dēcrētō is abl.). ²supply eōs: literally, they exclude these from the sacrifices. ³those who are so excluded. ⁴= in numerō. ⁵are accounted. ⁶supply dē viā, all make way for these. ⁷they avoid meeting them and conversing with them. ⁸eat they receive any harm from coming in contact with these: incommodi Part. Gen. after quid. ⁹neither to their petition is justice rendered, nor is any public office shared with them. ¹⁰is over (with dat. H. L., 229, 4). ¹¹excello, -ere, surpass. ¹²succēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, succeed. ¹³suffragium, I., N., vote. ¹⁴sometimes. ¹⁵considō, -ere, sēdi, -cessum, hold meeting. ¹⁶disputes. ¹⁷the system. ¹⁸from transferō, bring over. ¹⁹= disciplinam.

XLI

The Druids (continued, B. VI, 14).

Druides a bello abesse consuerunt¹ neque tributa² unâ³ cum reliquis pendunt⁴; militiae vacationem⁵ omniumque rerum habent immunitatem⁶. Tantis incitati praemiis et suâ sponte⁷ multi in disciplinam conveniunt et a parentibus propinquisque mittuntur. Magnum ibi numerum versuum⁸ ediscere⁹ dicuntur. Itaque annos nonnulli vicenos¹⁰ in disciplinâ permanent. Neque fas esse existimant ea litteris mandare¹¹, cum in reliquis fere rebus, publicis privatisque rationibus, Graecis litteris

utantur. Id mihi duabus de causis instituisse videntur; quod neque in vulgum disciplinam efferri¹² velint neque eos qui discunt litteris confisos¹³ minus memoriae studere¹⁴,—quod fere plerisque accidit¹⁵ ut praesidio¹⁶ litterarum diligentiam in perdiscendo ac memoriam remittant¹⁷. In primis hoc volunt persuadere¹⁸, non interire animas¹⁹, sed ab aliis post mortem transire ad alios; atque hoc maxime ad virtutem excitari putant metu mortis neglecto. Multa praeterea de sideribus²⁰ atque eorum motu²¹, de mundi²² ac terrarum magnitudine, de rerum naturā²³, de deorum immortalium vi ac potestate disputant et juventuti tradunt.

¹ = consueverunt, ² tributum, -i, N., tax. ³ together. ⁴ pendē, -ere, pependi, pensum, pay. ⁵ exemption. ⁶ freedom from public services. ⁷ of their own accord, ⁸ versus, -ūs, M., verse. ⁹ ediscō, -ere, learn by heart. ¹⁰ twenty each. ¹¹ commit. ¹² spread abroad. ¹³ confidō, -ere, confisus sum, trust. ¹⁴ pay too little heed to memory. ¹⁵ happens. ¹⁶ with the assistance of letters. ¹⁷ relax. ¹⁸ inculcate. ¹⁹ anima, ae, F. soul. ²⁰ sidus, -eris, N., star. ²¹ mōtus, -ūs, M., motion. ²² mundus, -i, universe. ²³ rerum naturā, the nature of things, science.

XLII

Religion of the Gauls (*B. VI, 16*).

Natio est omnis Gallorum admodum dedita religionibus¹; atque ob eam causam qui sunt affecti gravioribus morbis², quique in proeliis periculisque versantur³, aut pro victimis homines immolant⁴ aut se immolatuos vovent, administrisque⁵ ad ea sacrificia druidibus utuntur, quod pro vita hominis nisi hominis vita reddatur⁶, non posse deorum immortalium numen placari arbitrantur; publiceque ejusdem generis habent instituta sacrificia. Alii immani⁷ magnitudine simulacra⁸ habent, quorum contexta⁹ viminibus membra vivis hominibus complent¹⁰; quibus succensis¹¹ circumventi¹² flammā exanimantur¹³ homines. Supplicia¹⁴ eorum qui in furto¹⁵ aut in latrocinio¹⁶

aut aliquā noxiā¹⁷ sint comprehensi gratiora dis immortalibus esse arbitrantur; sed, cum ejus generis copia deficit¹⁸, etiam ad innocentium supplicia descendunt¹⁹.

¹wholly given up to religious observances. ²those who are distressed with incurable diseases. ³are engaged. ⁴sacrifice. ⁵administer, -tri, M., assistant, attendant priest. ⁶reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, give in compensation. ⁷immense. ⁸simulācrum, -ī, N., images of men, sc. hominum. ⁹contexō, -ere, -texui, -textum, weave. ¹⁰compleō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum, fill. ¹¹succendō, -ere, -cendi, -censum, burn. ¹²surrounded. ¹³perish. ¹⁴punishment. ¹⁵furtum, -ī, N., theft. ¹⁶latrocinium, -ī, N., robbery. ¹⁷guilty act. ¹⁸fails. ¹⁹they resort to.

XLIII

The Gods of the Gauls (*B. VI, 17*).

Deum maxime Mercurium colunt; bujus sunt plurima simulacra; hunc omnium inventorem¹ artium² ferunt³; hunc viarum atque itinerum ducem; hunc ad quaestus⁴ pecuniae mercaturasque⁵ habere vim maximam arbitrantur; post hunc Apollinem et Martem et Jovem et Minervam. De his eandem fere quam reliquae gentes habent opinionem⁶; Apollinem morbos depellere⁷, Minervam operum atque artificiorum initia tradere⁸, Jovem imperium caelestium⁹ tenere, Martem bella regere. Huic, cum proelio dimicare¹⁰ constituerunt, ea quae bello ceperint plerumque¹¹ devovent¹²; cum superaverunt animalia capta immolant reliquasque res in unum locum conferunt. Multis in civitatibus harum rerum exstructos¹³ tumulos locis consecratis conspicari¹⁴ licet; neque saepe accidit ut neglectā quispiam religione aut captā apud se occultare aut positā tollere auderet gravissimumque ei rei supplicium cum cruciatu¹⁵ constitutum est.

¹discoverer. ²handicraft. ³believe, regard. ⁴quaestus, -ūs, M., profit, gain. ⁵mercātūra, -ae, F., traffic. ⁶belief. ⁷ward off. ⁸instructs in the rudiments of works and arts, i.e., mechanical arts. ⁹caelestēs, -ium, pl. heavenly gods, supply deōrum. ¹⁰fight a pitched battle. ¹¹generally. ¹²devote. ¹³piled up. ¹⁴see. ¹⁵torture.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



XLVI ·

The Germans (B. VI, 21).

Germani multum ab hac consuetudine differunt. Nam neque druides habent qui rebus divinis praesint¹, neque sacrificiis student². Deorum numero³ eos solos ducunt, quos cernunt et quorum aperte opibus juvantur Solem et Vulcanum et Lunam; reliquos ne famam quidem acceperunt⁴. Vita omnis in venationibus⁵ atque in studiis rei militaris consistit⁶; ab parvulis⁷ labori ac duritiae student⁸. Qui diutissime impuberes⁹ permanserunt maximam inter suos ferunt laudem; hoc ali staturam, ali vires, nervosque confirmari putant. In fluminibus perfluuntur¹⁰ et pellibus ac parvis renonum tegmentis¹¹ utuntur, magnam corporis parte nudam.

¹H. L., 237, 1. ²perform. ³= in numero. ⁴not even by report have they heard of. ⁵hunting. ⁶consistō, -ere, -stiti, is spent. ⁷from their earliest age: parvulus, diminutive of parvus. ⁸they accustom themselves to toil and hardship. ⁹impūbēs, -eris, unmarried. ¹⁰perfluō, -ere, -fluxi, -fluxum, bathe themselves. ¹¹skins of reindeer.

XLVII

Land Tenure among the Germans (B. VI, 22).

Agriculturae non student¹ majorque pars eorum victus² in lacte, caseo³, carne consistit. Neque quisquam agri modum certum⁴ aut fines habet proprios⁵ sed magistratus ac principes⁶ in annos singulos gentibus⁷ cognationibusque⁸ hominum qui tum unam coierunt⁹ quantum et quo loco visum est agri¹⁰ attribuunt¹¹ atque anno post alio transire cogunt. Ejus rei multas afferunt¹² causas; ne assidua consuetudine capti¹³ studium belli gerendi agriculturam¹⁴ commutent¹⁵; ne latos fines parare studeant¹⁶ potentioresque humiliores possessionibus expellant; ne accuratius ad frigora atque aestus vitandos aedificent; ne

qua oriatur pecuniae cupiditas qua ex re factiones-dissension-
esque nascuntur; ut animi aequitate¹⁷ plebem contineant cum
suas quisque opes cum potentissimis aequari¹⁸. vident.

¹They pay no heed. ²victus, -us, M., food. ³caseus, -i, M., cheese.
⁴fixed amount. ⁵of his own. ⁶join with attribuunt. ⁷clana. ⁸familiae.
⁹of the people who have met on the occasion. ¹⁰Partitive Genitive
depending on quantum. ¹¹assign. ¹²give. ¹³charmed by habitual
custom. ¹⁴abl. of Price: H. L., 293, 4. ¹⁵exchange: i.e., abandon the
pursuit of war for agriculture. ¹⁶aim at acquiring. ¹⁷contentment.
¹⁸is on an equality with.

XLVIII

Warlike habits of the Germans (B. VI, 23).

Civitatibus maxima laus est¹ quam latissime² circum se
vastatis finibus solitudines habere. Hoc proprium³ virtutis
existimant, expulsos agris finitimos cedere⁴ neque quemquam
prope audere consistere⁵; simul hoc se fore tutiores arbitrantur
repentinae incursionis timore sublato⁶. Cum bellum civitas aut
illatum⁷ defendit aut infert, magistratus qui ei bello praesint⁷
et vitae necisque⁸ habeant potestatem deliguntur. In pace
nullus est communis magistratus sed principes regionum atque
pagorum⁹ inter suos jus dicunt¹⁰ controversiasque minuunt¹¹.
Latreteria nullam habent¹² infamiam¹³ quae extra fines cujus-
que civitatis fiunt atque ea juventutis exercendae ac desidia¹⁴
minuendae causa fieri praedicant¹⁵. Hospitem¹⁶ violare fas
non putant et qui quaecumque de causa¹⁷ ad eos venerunt ab
injuria prohibent, sanctos¹⁸ habent, bisque omnium domus
patent¹⁹ victusque communicatur²⁰.

¹the greatest reputation that a state can have in. ²as far and wide
as possible. ³a characteristic. ⁴that their neighbors being driven out
of their lands should retire before them. ⁵settle. ⁶from tollō: remove.
⁷bellum illatum, an aggressive war. ⁷Final Rel. and Subj.: H. L.,
232, 2. ⁸nex, necis, F., death. ⁹pagus, -i, M., canton. ¹⁰administer
justice. ¹¹minuō, -ere, minui, minutum, settle. ¹²regard. ¹³disgrace.
¹⁴for the purpose of lessening intolerance. ¹⁵praedicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,
avow. ¹⁶hospes, -itis, M., guest. ¹⁷for any reason whatever. ¹⁸sacred.
¹⁹pateō, -āre, -ui, be open. ²⁰is shared.

XLIX

**The Germans and the Gauls contrasted in bravery
(B. VI, 24).**

Ac fuit antea tempus cum Germanos Galli virtute superarent, ultro¹ bella inferrent, propter hominum² multitudinem agrique inopiam trans Rhenum colonias mitterent. Itaque ea³ quae fertilissima Germaniae sunt loca circum Hercyniam silvam quam Eratostheni et quibusdam Graecis famam notam esse video, Volcae Teutisages⁴ occupaverunt atque ibi conserunt⁵; quae gens ad hoc tempus his sedibus sese continet summamque habet justitiae et bellicae laudis opinionem. Nunc quod in eadem inopia, egestate, patientia Germani permanent⁶, eodem victu et cultu corporis utuntur; Gallis autem provinciarum Romanarum propinquitas⁷ et transmarinarum rerum notitia⁸ multa ad usus largitur⁹, paulatim assuefacti superari multisque victi proelia, ne se quidem ipsi cum illis virtute comparant.

¹voluntarily. ²population. ³join with loca. ⁴a Gallic tribe. ⁵conside, -ere, -sedi, -sessum, settle. ⁶as the Germans live in the same poverty, want and endurance of hardships. ⁷nearness. ⁸knowledge of things beyond the sea. ⁹brings in many things they regard as essentials.

L

The Hercynian Forest (B. VI, 25).

Hujus Hercyniae silvae, quae supra demonstrata est, latitudo novem dierum iter expedito patet¹; non enim aliter finiri² potest, neque mensuras³ itinerum noverunt. Oritur⁴ ab Helvetiorum finibus rectaque fluminis Danuvii regione⁵ pertinet ad fines Dacorum⁶; multarumque gentium fines propter magnitudinem attingit; neque quisquam est hujus Germaniae qui se aut adisse ad initium ejus silvae dicat⁷, cum⁸ dierum iter sexaginta processerit, aut quo ex loco oriatur



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of
human knowledge in
797,885 volumes

Instant access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

LII

The primitive Ox (*B. VI, 28*).

Tertium est genus eorum¹ qui uri² appellantur. Hi sunt magnitudine paulo infra³ elephantos, specie⁴ et colore et figura tauri. Magna vis eorum est et magna velocitas. Neque homini neque feræ quam conspexerunt parcent. Hos studiosè⁵ foveis⁶ captos interficiunt⁷; hoc se labore durant⁸ adolescentes atque hoc genere venationis⁹ exercent et qui plurimos ex his interfecerunt, relatis in publicum cornibus¹⁰, magnam ferunt laudem. Sed adsuescere¹¹ ad homines et mansuescere¹² ne parvuli quidem¹³ possunt. Amplitudo cornuum et figura et species multum a nostrorum boum cornibus differt¹³. Haec studiosè conquisita¹⁴ ab labris¹⁵ argento circumcludunt¹⁴ atque in amplissimis epulis¹⁷ pro poculis¹⁸ utuntur.

¹literally, is of those; consists of those, ²urus, -i, M., wild ox or bison. ³a little less than. ⁴of the appearance. ⁵eagerly. ⁶fovea, -ae, F., pitfall, snare. ⁷they eagerly capture in pitfalls and kill these. ⁸make themselves hardy. ⁹venatio, -onis, F., hunting. ¹⁰when the horns are brought into a public place: with publicum supply locum. ¹¹adsuescō, -ere, -suēvi, -suētum, become accustomed. ¹²mansuescō, -ere, -feci, -factum, tame. ¹³not even when caught young. ¹⁴differe, -ferre, distul, distulatum, differ. ¹⁵conquirō, -ere, -quisivi, -quistum, seek out. ¹⁶labrum, -i, N. lip: translate, at the rim. ¹⁷circumcludō, -ere, -clūsi, -clūsum, surround. ¹⁸epulum, -i, N. (sing.): epulae, -arum, F. (pl.), banquet. ¹⁹poculum, -i, N. cup: translate, as drinking cup.

LIII

A force left on the Rhine (*B. VI, 29*).

Caesar, postquam per Ubios exploratores comperit¹ Suebos sese in silvas recepisse, inopiam frumenti veritus quod, ut supra demonstravimus, minime omnes Germani agriculturae student constituit non progredi longius; sed ne omnino metum reditus

sui barbaris¹ tolleret atque ut eorum auxilia tardaret², reducto exercitu, partem³ ultimam pontis quas ripas Ubiorum contingebat⁴ in longitudinem pedum ducentorum rescindit⁵ atque in extremo ponte turrim constituit praesidiumque cohortium duodecim pontis tuendi causa⁶ ponit magnisque eum locum munitionibus firmat. Ei loco praesidioque Caium Volcatium Tullum adolescentem praefecit.

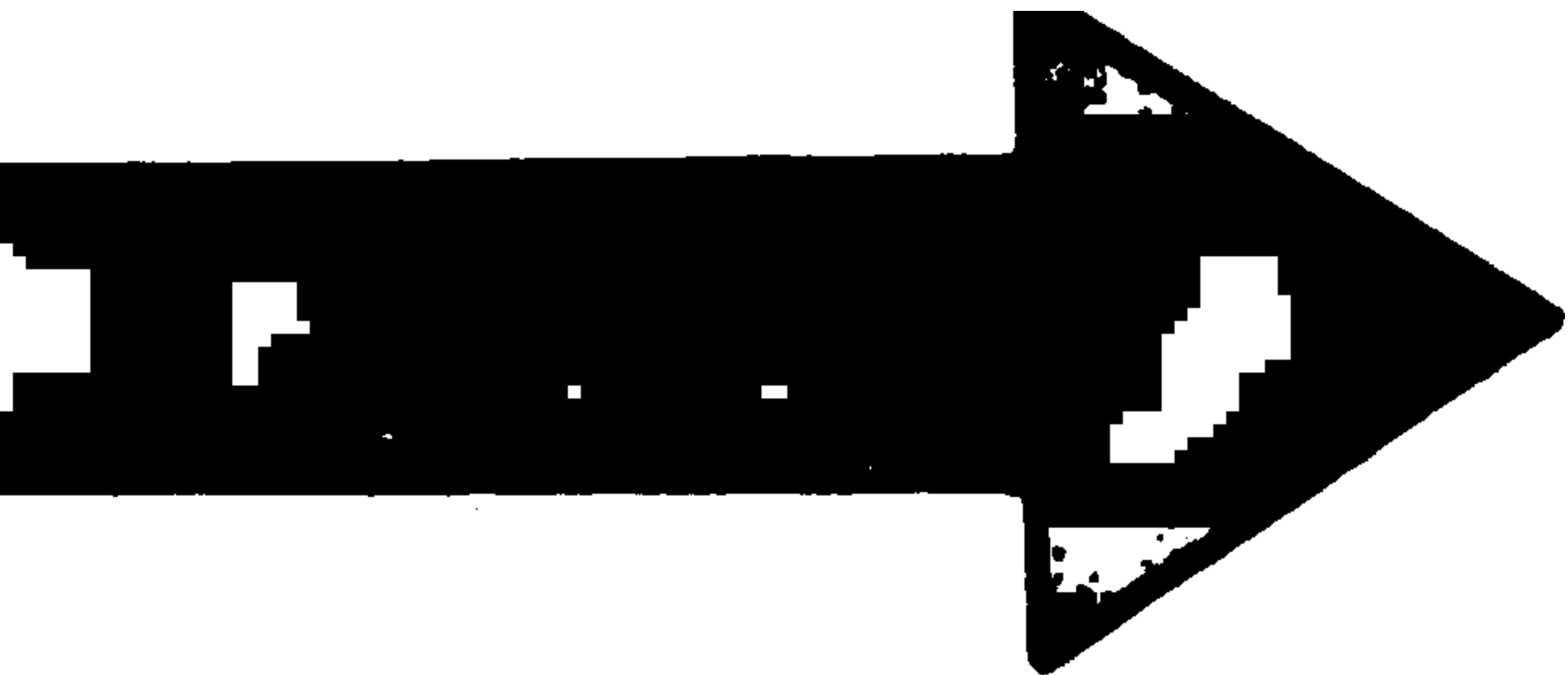
¹comperiō, 4, comperi, compertum, find out. ²dat. H. L., 285, 5, (b); translate: but that he might not altogether relieve the barbarians of all fear of his return. ³tardō, 1, keep back. ⁴object of rescindit. ⁵contingō, -ere, contigi, contactum, join. ⁶rescindō, -ere, rescidi, rescisum, cut down.

LIV

A Roman Hero (B. VI, 38).

Erat aeger cum praesidio relictus Publius Sextus Baculus cujus mentionem superioribus proeliis fecimus ac diem jam quintum cibo¹ caruerat². Hic diffusus³ suae atque omnium salutis inermis⁴ ex tabernaculo⁵ prodit⁶; videt imminere⁷ hostes atque in summo esse rem discrimine; capit arma a proximis atque in porta consistit. Consequuntur hunc centuriones ejus cohortis quae in statione erat; paulisper unā proelium sustinent. Relinquit animus Sextium⁸ gravissimis acceptis vulneribus; aegre servatur. Hoc spatio interposito, reliqui sese confirmant tantum ut in munitionibus consistere audeant speciemque defensorum praebent.

¹cibus, -i, M., food. ²careō, -ere, carui, caritum, be without (gov. abl.). ³diffidō, -ere, diffusus sum, distrust (semi-deponent: H. L., 135, 5) fido and its compounds usually govern dat. of person and abl. of thing: fearing for his own safety and that of his comrades. ⁴inermis, -e, adj., unarmed. ⁵tabernaculum, -i, N., tent. ⁶prodeō, -ire, -ii, -itum advance. ⁷immineō, -ēre, be near. ⁸Sextius faints, or becomes unconscious.





THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



LV

Caesar returns in safety (B. VI, 41).

Germani desperatā expugnatione castrorum, quod nostros jam constitisse¹ in munitionibus videbant, cum eā praedā quam in silvis deposuerant trans Rhenum sese receperunt; ac tantus fuit etiam post discessum² hostium terror ut eā nocte, cum Caius Volusenus missus cum equitatu ad castra venisset, fidem non faceret³ adesse cum incolumi Caesarem exercitu. Sic omnino⁴ animos timor praeoccupaverat⁵ ut paene alienatā mente,⁶ deletis omnibus copiis, equitatum se ex fugā recepisse dicerent, neque incolumi exercitu Germanos castra oppugnaturōs fuisse contenderent. Quem timorem Caesaris adventus sustulit⁷.

¹constitā, -ere, -stiti, stitum, take a position. ²discessus, -us, M., withdrawal. ³could not make them believe. ⁴completely. ⁵taken possession of. ⁶almost beside themselves. ⁷tollō, 3, sustuli, sublātum, remove.

VOCABÜLARY

ABBREVIATIONS

C stands for Caesar: the Roman numeral refers to Book of Caesar's Gallic war: the Arabic numeral to the chapter.

<p>abl. ablative. acc. accusative. adj. adjective. adv. adverb. cf. compare. comp. comparative. conj. conjunction. dat. dative. defec. defective. dem. demonstrative. dep. deponent. dim. diminutive. distrib. distributive. F. feminine. gen. genitive. imperu. impersonal. indecl. indeclinable. indef. indefinite. interrog. interrogative.</p>		<p>intr. intransitive. irreg. irregular. M. masculine. N. neuter num. numeral. ord. ordinal. p. page. part. participle. pass. passive. perf. perfect. pl. plural. prep. preposition. pro. pronoun. rel. relative. sc. supply. sing. singular. sup. superlative. tr. transitive. v. verb.</p>
--	--	--

The quantity of vowels long or short by position and of diphthongs (which are all long) and of short vowels is not given.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of
human knowledge in
797,885 volumes

Instant access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

acūtus, -a, -um, adj., sharp, keen.
ad, prep. (with acc.), to, against, towards, near to, at, alongside (c. iv, 26) often used with gerund or gerundive, for the purpose of (c. iv, 23, 29, 31); **ad pristinam fortunam**, to complete his former good fortune (c. iv, 26); **ad diem**, on the right day, punctually (c. v, 1); **ad Cantium**, at Kent (c. v, 13); **ad solis occasum**, at sunset (c. v, 8); **ad hunc modum**, in this way.
adaequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., equal.
addō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, v. tr., add, join to.
adducō, -ere, -duxi, -ductum, v. tr., lead to, bring to (of persons) (c. iv, 22, 86); induce (c. iv, 87).
adeō, -ire, -iī (-ivi), -itum, v. tr. and intr., approach, visit, reach.
adeō, adv., to this point, so, such, to that degree.
(ador), -ārī, -ātus sum, speak to.
adfore, fut. infn. of **adsum**; see **adsum**.
adhibeō, -āre, -hibuī, -hibitum, v. tr., summon, call in, admit; **adhibitis principibus majoribusque natu**, summoning the chiefs and elders (c. iv, 13).
adhortor, -hortārī, -hortātus sum, v. dep., encourage.
adhuc, adv., to this place, thus far, as yet.
adjiciō, -jicere, -jēci, -jectum, v. tr., throw to, throw up; **in litus telum adjici poterat**, a dart could be thrown to the water's edge (c. iv, 23); **aggerem ad munitiones adjicere**, to throw up a mound against the fortifications (c. v, 9).
adimō, -ere, -ēmi, -emptura, v. tr., take away, deprive of.
aditus -ūs, M., approach, landing-place (c. v, 20); **mercatoribus est aditus**, merchants have access (c. iv, 2).
adjungō, -ere, -juxi, -junctum, v. tr., join to, add.
adjuvō, -āre, -jūvi, -jūtum, v. tr., aid, help, assist.
administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., do, manage; **cum paulo tardius administratum esset**, when this was done somewhat slowly (c. iv, 23); **republicam administrare**, to carry on the government.
admittō, -ere, -misi, -missum, v. tr., allow, permit; **facinus admittere**, to commit a crime; **dedecus**

admittere, to be guilty of a disgrace (c. iv, 26).
admodum, adv., very much, greatly; with numbers, fully, at least.
adolescens, -centia, M., a youth.
adorior, -oriri, -ortus sum, v. tr. dep., rise up against, attack, assail.
adportō, -portāre, -portāvi, -portātum, v. tr., convey to.
adsentiō, -sentire, -sensi, -sensum, v. intr., assent, approve.
adservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., guard closely, closely cling to.
adspirō, -spirāre, -spirāvi, -spirātum (with dat.), breathe upon, am favorable to.
adstō, -stāre, -stiti, no sup., stand by, stand erect.
adsum, -esse, -fui, v. intr., be present, near.
adventus, -ūs, M., arrival.
adversus, -a, -um, adj., turned to, opposed to, unfavorable: **nocte adversa**, in the teeth of night, or in a foul night (c. iv, 28); **adversi venti**, warring winds.
adversus, prep. (with acc.), opposed to, over against.
advertō, -ere, -verti, -versum, v. tr., turn to; **animum advertere**, to notice.
advolo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., fly to, hasten to.
aedēs, -is, F., a temple; in plural, a house or temple.
aedificium, -i, n., dwelling, house.
aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., build.
Aedui, -ōrum, M. pl., the Aedui, a tribe of Gaul (*France*).
Aeduus, -a, -um, adj., Aeduan.
aeger, -gra, -grum, adj., sick (comp. **aegrīor**; sup., **aegerrimus**).
aegrē, adv., with difficulty, scarcely, hardly.
Aenēās, -ae, M.; *Aeneas*, son of Anchises and Venus, and hero of the Aeneid.
aeneus, -a, -um, adj., made of bronze or copper.
aequinoctium, i. N., the equinox, either 21st March or 21st September; in Caesar, the latter.
aequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., make equal.
aequor, -oris, N., sea.
aequus, -a, -um, adj., just.
aerātus, -a, -um, adj., of brass, brazen.

aes, aera, N., bronze, copper (c. iv, 81) money; **aes alienum**, debt (literally, money belonging to another)

aestas, -atis, F., summer; **media aestate**, in the middle of summer; **extrema aestate**, at the end of summer; **prima aestate**, at the beginning of summer; **aestatem con. sumere**, to spend the summer (c. v, 4).

aestimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., value, think, reckon; **litem aestimare**, to assess the amount of damages (c. v, 1).

aestua, -ūs, M., tide.

aether, -eria, M., the bright upper air, sky

aetas, -atis, F., period of life, age; **per aetatem**, on account of age (c. v, 3).

afferō, -ferre, attulī, allātum, v. tr., bring to, assign, report, announce.

affirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., assert, declare.

affictō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., damage, wreck.

affigō, -ere, -fixī, -fictum, v. tr., damage; **navem affigere**, to shatter a vessel (c. iv, 81); **afflictus**, downcast.

afflō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., breathe upon, blast.

affluō, -ere, -fluxī, -fluxum, v. tr., flow to; throng, flock to.

Africus, -i, M. (properly an adj., with **ventus** understood); the southwest wind, still called *Africo* by the Italians.

Agamemnon, -onis, M., *Agamemnon*, king of Mycenae in Greece, and commander of the Greek forces at Troy.

ager, agrī, M., a field, land; pl., lands, territories.

agger, -eria, M., a mound.

agglomerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr. (with dat.), join themselves to.

aggredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, v. tr. dep., go against, assail, attack.

aggregō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., join to; **se aggregare** (military term), fall in (c. iv, 28).

agitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., keep moving, pursue, ponder (freq. from **agō**).

agmen, -inis, N., an army on the march; a column; **agmine certo**: with unwavering course

agnoscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum, v. tr., recognize.

agō, agere, ēgī, actum, v. tr., move, go, do, drive; **clamoribus**

actus, influenced by the shouts.

alō, v. tr., defective, 3rd sing., alt.

Ajax, -ācis; N. m.; *Ajax*, a Grecian hero, son of Oileus, king of the Locri in Greece. Sometimes called *the lesser Ajax* to distinguish him from the greater Ajax, son of Telamon, who, being defeated by Ulysses in the contest for the Arms of Achilles, went mad and slew himself.

alacritās, -atis, F., dash, haste; **alacritate uti**, to show dash (c. iv, 24).

albus, -a, -um, adj., white; **album plumbum**, tin (c. v, 12).

aliénus, -a, -um, adj., belonging to another; another's; strange, foreign, hostile; **aes alienum**, debt (another's money); **alieno loco**, on unfavorable ground; **alienum tempus**, an unfavorable time (c. iv, 34).

aliō, adv., elsewhere.

aliquamdiū, adv., for some time; for a while.

aliquantus, -a, -um, adj., considerable, some; **aliquantum itineris**, some distance (c. v, 10).

aliqui, -quae, -quod, indef. pro., some one, any one.

aliquis, -qua, -quid, indep. pro., some one, any one; **aliquid temporis**, some time.

aliter, adv., otherwise.

alius, -a, -ud (for declension see H. L., p. 48, 2), pro., another, other, different; **alius...alius**, one...another; **alii...alii**, some...others; **alius alia ex navi**, one from one ship, another from another (c. iv, 26).

allātus: see **afferō**.

almus, -a, -um, adj., nurturing; kindly (**alō**, "nourish").

alō, alere, alui, altum or altum, v. tr., rear, nourish.

altāria, -iarum, n, pl., altar (**altus**, "high").

alter, -era, -erum, adj., one of two; **alter...alter**, the one...the other; **alteri...alteri**, the one party...the other party

altitūdō, -inis, F., height, depth.

altus, -a, -um, adj., high, deep; **in alto**, on the deep; also in pl. **tranquilla per alta**

alvus, -i, F., belly.

ambiguus, -a, -um, adj., of doubtful meaning, dark.

ambo, -ae, -o, adj., both.

Amens, -tis, adj., out of one's mind, mad.

Amentia, -ae, F., madness, folly.

amicōs, adv., friendly.

amicitia, -ae, F., friendship; **amicitia deficere**, cast off an alliance.

amicus, -a, -um, adj., friendly.

amicus, -i, M., a friend.

amittō, -ere, -misi, -missum, v. tr., lose.

Amnis, -is, M., river.

amor, -ōris, love, desire.

amplē, adv., abundantly; **comp. amplius, more.**

amplector, -plecti, -plexus sum, v. dep., embrace, encircle

amplius, neut. comp. of adj., **amplius, more, further.** Often used with numerals without any influence on the construction: **amplius octingentae (naves)**, more than eight hundred ships.

amplius, -a, -um, adj., large, noble, distinguished; **amplissimo genere natus**, born of a most illustrious family.

an, interrogative participle, whether, or.

Ancalites, -um, pl. M., the *Ancalites*, a British tribe in Berkshire and Oxfordshire.

Anchises, -ae, M., *Anchises*, father of Aeneas.

ancora, -ae, F., an anchor; **navem tenere in ancoris**, to keep a ship at anchor; **ancoram tollere**, to weigh anchor (c. iv, 23); **in ancoris expectare**, to wait at anchor (c. iv, 23); **ancoram jacere**, to cast anchor (c. iv, 23); **ad ancoras naves deligare**, to ride at anchor (c. v, 9).

ancilla, -ae, F., a hand-maid, servant.

Androgeōs, -i, M., *Androgeos*, a Greek hero

Andromachē, -ē, F., *Andromache*, wife of Hector

anguis, -is, M. and F., snake, serpent.

angulus, -i, M., a corner.

angustē, adv., narrowly, closely; **angustius milites collocare**, to stow the soldiers in somewhat narrower space than usual.

angustiae, -arum, pl. F., defile, strait (of sea).

angustus, -a, -um, adj., narrow, contracted; **angusta viarum = angusta loca viarum**, the narrow places of the streets

anima, -ae, F., life, soul; **animam deponere**, to relinquish his life.

animadvertō, -ere, -verti, -versum, v. tr., notice.

animal, -alis, N., animal.

animus, -i, M., mind, soul, spirit, courage; **magni animi**, of great courage (c. v, 6); **animis impeditis**, when the attention of all was engaged (c. v, 7); **animi voluptatisque causa**, for sentiment and amusement (c. v, 12); **fidens animi**, confident in soul; **conversi (sunt) animi**; our feelings were altered.

annon, interrog. particle, or not (in the second member of a direct question).

annōtinus, -a, -um, adj., of the year before.

annus, -i, a year; **primis ab aonnis**, from my early years.

anser, -eris, M., a goose.

ante, (1) adv., previously, before; **paucis ante diebus**, a few days before; (2) **prep. with acc. only**; before, in front of, in advance of. For **ante quam** see **antequam**

antē, adv., previously, before.

antepōnō, -ere, -posui, -positum, v. tr., prefer.

antequam, conj., before.

antiquus, -a, -um, adj., old, ancient.

Ap = Appius, a Roman praenomen (see cognomen)

aperiō, -ire, ui, -tum, v. tr., open.

apertus, -a, -um, ad., open, exposed; **aperto litore**, on an open shore (c. iv, 23); **ad latus apertum** (c. iv, 25); **ab latere aperto**, on the exposed flank (on the right side) (c. iv, 28).

Apollo, -inis, M., *Apollo*

appareō, -ere, -parui, -paritum, v. intr., attend, appear

apparō, -āre, -avi, -atum, v. tr., prepare, make preparations for, provide for.

appellō, -āre, -avi, -atum, v. tr., call.

appellō, -ere, -puli, -pulsum, v. tr., bring to land (of ships); in passive, call at, touch at (c. v, 13).

Appius, -i, Appius, a Roman praenomen (see nomen)

apportō, -āre, -avi, -atum, v. tr., bring, carry to (a place).

appropinquō, -āre, -avi, -atum (with dat.), v. intr., approach, come near (c. iv, 25, 28).

aptō, -āre, -avi, -atum, v. tr., fit, fit on.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

asylum, -i, N., place of refuge, sanctuary (*ἀσυλον*).

at, conj., but, yet.

ater, **ātra**, **ātrum**, adj., black, gloomy.

atque (contracted **ac**; **atque**, before vowels, **ac**, before consonants), conj., and also, and even, and (stronger than **et**); **par atque**, the same as; **aliter atque**, different than; **contra atque**, otherwise than.

Atrebas, -atis, adj., *Atrebatian*.

Atrebatēs, -um, M., *the Atrebatēs*, a people of Belgic Gaul in the modern Artois or Arvas (*Flemish Atrecht*).

atrium, -i, N., court.

Atridas, -arum, M. pl., *the sons of Atreus*, i. e., Agamemnon and Menelaus.

Atrius, -i, M., *Quintus Atrius*, an officer in Caesar's army, who was left on the south coast of Britain to look after the fleet while Caesar marched inland on his second expedition, 54 B.C.

attingō, -ere, -tigi, -tactum, v. tr., touch, reach; **terram attingere**, reach land (c. v, 13).

attollō, -tollere, v. tr., raise.

attractō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, handle, (ad. **tracto**).

auctor, -ōris, M.; **me auctore**, at my suggestion.

auctoritas, -ātis, F., authority, influence, power, prestige.

auctumnus (or **autumnus**), -i, M., autumn.

audācia, -ae, F., boldness, daring.

audāciter, adv., boldly.

audacter, same as **audaciter**.

audax, -ācis, adj., bold, daring.

audeō, -ēre, **ausus sum**, semi-dep. v. tr. and intr., dare, be bold; **audere in proelio**, to be bold for battle.

audiō, -ire, -ivi, -itum, v. tr., hear.

augurium, i, N., omen by the utterance of birds; **omen** (**avis**; root **GAH**, "to call").

aula, -ae, F., a hall.

aura, -ae, F., air.

aurātus, -a, -um, adj., gilded.

aureus, -a, -um, adj., golden, of gold.

auriga, -ae, M., a charioteer, driver.

auris, -is, F., an ear.

aurum, -i, N., gold.

Aurunculeius, -i, M., *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta*, one of the lieutenants

of Caesar in Gaul. He fell in an ambuscade planned by Ambiorix, 54 B.C.

Auster, -tri, M., south wind.

ausum, -i, N., daring deed (**audeo**).

aut, conj., or; **aut...aut**, either .. or.

autem, conj., but, moreover, yet, also, now. (Never put first in a clause).

Automedon, -ontis, M., *Automedon*, charioteer of Achilles.

autumnus, see **auctumnus**.

auxillor, -āri, **ātus sum**, v. intr. dep. (with dat.), give help.

auxilium, -i, N., aid, support; in plur. **auxilia**, -orum, auxiliary troops.

avēhō, -ere, -vexi, -vectum, v. tr. carry away.

avellō, -ere, -velli, or -vulsi, -vulsum, v. tr., tear away.

aversus, -a, -um, (perf. part. pass. of **averto** used as an) adj., turned away.

avertō, -ere, -ti, -sum, turn away.

avidus, -a, -um, adj., eager, covetous.

avius, -a, -um, adj. (a. "away from," via), pathless; N. **avium**, as subst., by-path.

avus, -i, M., a grandfather.

axis, -is, M., axle, axis; the axis of heaven, heaven.

B

barbari, -ōrum, M. pl., barbarians, a name first applied by the Greeks, then by the Romans, to the people of other nations.

barbarus, -a, -um, adj., savage, barbarous.

Belgae, -arum, pl. M., *the Belgae*, a general name applied to a warlike people of north-eastern Gaul, from the *Mosa* (*Meuse*) to the *Sequana* (*Seine*), partly Celtic, partly Teutonic. The chief tribes were the *Remi*, *Morini*, *Nervii*, *Suessonae*.

Belgium, -i, N., *Belgium*, the part of Gallia Belgica inhabited by the *Bellovacii*, *Atrebatēs* and the *Ambiani*.

bellicōsus, -a, -um, adj., warlike.

Bēlides, -idae, M., (*patronymic*), son of *Belus*; see *Palamēdes*.

bellum, -i, N., war; **bellum populo Romano facere**, to make war against the Roman people (c. iv, 22).

bene, adv., well, prosperously; comp., **melius**; sup., **optime**.

Bibrocii, -orum, M. pl., the *Bibrocii*, a tribe of Britain which occupied *Berks, Sussex, Surrey* and adjoining district.

biduum, -i, N., a space of two days.

bigae, -arum (= bi-jugae; bi-jugum, a yoke), F. (pl.), a car or chariot drawn by two horses.

bipatens, -entis, adj., opening in two ways, swinging.

bipennis, -is, F., double axe.

bis, num, adv., twice.

bonus, -a, -um, adj., good; comp., *melior*; sup., *optimus*.

bos, bovis, M. or F., an ox, cow; pl., *boves*, cattle.

brachium, -i, N., arm.

brevis, -e, adj., short, brief; *brevis (tempore)*, in a short time, soon (c. iv, 23).

breviter, adv., shortly, briefly.

Britanni, -orum, pl. M., *Britons*.

Britannia, -ae, F., *Britain*.

Britannicus, -a, -um, adj., *British*.

bruma, -ae, F. (= brevima = brevissima (dies) the shortest day), the winter solstice; Dec. 21st.

O

O., an abbreviation for *Oaius*, a Roman praenomen (see *praenomen*) as in *Oaius Julius Caesar, Caius Volusenus, Caius Trebonius*.

cadō, cadere, cecidi, casum, v. intr., fall; set; *cadentia sidera*, setting stars.

caecus, -a, -um, adj., blind (Verg. 24); *caeco Marte resistunt*, they resist in aimless war.

caedis, -is, F., slaughter, murder.

caedō, caedere, cecidi, casum, v. tr., cut, slay.

caelicola, -ae, M. and F., one who dwells in heaven; heavenly being; (*caelum, colo*).

caelum, -i, N., sky, heavens.

caerimonia, -ae, F., rite, reverence, veneration, awe.

caeruleus, -a, -um, adj., deep blue, sky-blue.

Caesar, -aris, M.

Calchas, -antis, M., *Calchas*, a Greek soothsayer.

caligō, -inis, F., thick darkness.

campus, -i, M., plain, field.

canō, canere, cecini, cantum, v. tr. and intr., sing, prophecy (because oracles were expressed in verse).

Cantium, -i, N., *Kent*, a county in south-eastern England.

capillus, -i, M., hair; esse pro-missus capillo, to wear long hair (c. v, 14).

capio, capere, cepi, captum, v. tr., take; portum capere, to make the harbor (c. iv, 20); so *inulam capere* (c. iv, 26, v. 8); *capere consilium*, to form a plan (c. v, 1).

captivus, -i, M., a captive, prisoner.

captus, -a, -um (perf. part. pass. of capio), taken, captured, charmed, influenced.

capulus, -i, M., the handle, hilt (*capio*; hence, "the thing grasped").

caput, -itis, N., head.

Carya, -yos, M., *Carya*, a Trojan.

cardo, -inis, M., hinge.

careo, -ere, -ui, -itum, or casum, be without (with abl.)

carina, -ae, F., hull of a vessel, keel.

carmen, -inis, N., song.

carō, -nis, F., flesh; *carne vivere*, to live on flesh (c. v, 14).

cārus, -a, -um, adj., dear, beloved, agreeable to.

Carvilius, -i, M., *Carvilius*, a petty king of Kent (c. v, 22).

Cassandra, -ae, F., *Cassandra*, daughter of Priam, inspired by Apollo with the gift of prophecy, but doomed by him never to be believed.

Cassi, -orum, pl. M., the *Cassi*, a British tribe that inhabited Herefordshire.

Cassius, -i, M., *Caius Cassius Longinus*, one of the assassins of Caesar. He died 42 B.C., at Philippi.

Cassivellaunus, -i, M., *Cassivellaunus*, or *Carwallon*, the able commander-in-chief of the British army opposed to Caesar. His chief town was *Verulamium*, (now *St. Albans*).

casus, -a, -um, perf. part. pass. of careo, deprived of (with abl.); (see *careo*).

castellum, -i, N., a fortress.

Casticus, -i, M., *Casticus*, a chief of the Sequani, whom Orgetorix induced to seize the supreme power in his state.

castrum, -i, N., a hut, fort; in pl., *castra, -orum*, a camp; *castra*

ponere, to pitch a camp; **castra munire**; to fortify a camp, to pitch a camp; **castra movere**, to advance; **castra navalia**, an encampment on the shore for protecting the fleet and the troops while landing; sometimes connected with the ships drawn up on land (c. v, 22).

casū, (abl. of **casus**, used as an) adv., by chance.

casus, -ūs, M., chance, misfortune, emergency.

caterva, -ae, F., band.

catulus, -i, M., whelp, cub.

causa, -ae, F., cause; **sine causā**, without reason (c. iv, 27; c. v, 6).

causā, adv. (really abl. of **causa**, with the noun depending on it in the gen.), for the sake of, on account of; **mea causa**, for my sake; often with gerundives, **frigoris depellendi causa**, for the purpose of warding off the cold (c. iv, 22).

cavō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., make hollow, pierce.

cavus, -a, -um, adj., hollow.

cēdō, **cēdere**, **cessi**, **cessum**, v. intr., go, yield; fall back, retire; **insequi cedentes**, to overtake the retreating foe (c. v, 16).

celeritas, -atis, F., swiftness, speed.

celeriter, adv., quickly; comp., **celerius**; sup., **celerrimē**.

celsus, -a, -um, adj., high, lofty.

Centimagni, -ōrum, M., pl., the *Centimagni*. The word *Centimagni* is said to be a corruption for *Iconimagni*. They inhabited Norfolk and Suffolk, north of the Trinobantes.

centum, num. adj., indecl., hundred.

Cerēs, -eris, F., *Ceres*, goddess of agriculture.

cernō, **cernere**, **crēvi**, **crētum**, v. tr., see perceive.

certāmen, -inis, N., conflict, battle, struggle.

certē, adv., at least, certainly.

certātim, adv. with emulation, earnestly (**certo**).

certō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., strive, contend.

certus, -a, -um, adj., certain, fixed, true; **aliquem certiore facere**, inform; **certior fieri**, to be informed; **certus locus**, a definite place; **certa dies**, a fixed day (c. v, 1).

cervix, -icis, F., neck.

cessō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., cease.

(**cēterus**), -a, -um (nom. sing. not found; usually in plural), the rest, others.

ceu, adv., as, just as, as if.

ciō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., stir up.

Cingetorix, -igis, M., *Cingetoris*; (1) a Gaul attached to Caesar, and rival of Indutiomarus for the chieftainship of the Treveri (c. v, 8). (2) a British chief of Kent (c. v, 22).

cingō, **cingere**, **cinxi**, **cinctum**, v. tr., surround.

cinis, -eris, M., ashes.

circā, adv. and prep. (with acc.); about, around, in the neighborhood of (see **circum**).

circiter, adv. (with numeral adjectives); about, nearly.

circueō, see **circumeō**.

circuitus, -ūs, M., circumference.

circum, prep. (with acc.), around.

circumdō, -dare, -dedi, -datum, v. tr., place around, surround; **urbem muro** (abl.) **circumdare**, or **urbi** (dat.) **murum circumdare**, to surround the city with a wall.

circumeō, **ire**, -ii (-ivi), -itum or **circutum**, v. tr., go around, visit; **hiberna circumire**, to inspect the winter quarters (c. v, 2).

circumerrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, wander round.

circumfundō, -fundere, -fudi, -fūsum, v. tr., pour around; in passive, surround, crowd around.

circumistō, **istere**, -steti, no sup., v. tr. and intr., surround.

circumspiciō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum, v. tr., see around.

circumstō, -stāre, -steti, no sup., v. tr. and intr., stand around, surround.

circumvolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., surround.

citerior, -ōris, adj. (p. 80, 2), on this side, hither; **Gallia citerior**, Gaul on this (i. e., the Roman) side of the Alps (*Northern Italy*), opposed to **Gallia ulterior**, Gaul beyond the Alps (*France*).

citō, adv., rapidly, swiftly; comp., **citius**; sup. **citissimē**.

civis, -is, M. or F., citizen.

civitas, -atis, F., state, commonwealth; **civitati consulere**, to take measures for the benefit of the state (c. v, 2).

clādēs, -is, F., slaughter, disaster.

clām, adv., secretly.

clāmor, -ōris, M., shout.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of
human knowledge in
797,885 volumes

Instant access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

compellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., address.

**comperiō, -perire, -perī, -per-
tum, v. tr.,** find out, discover.

**complector, -plectī, -plexus
sum, v. dep.,** embrace.

**compleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētum,
v. tr.,** fill completely; *naves militibus
complere, to man ships with soldiers*
(c. iv, 26).

complūrēs, -plūra, adj. pl., very
many, several.

**comportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v.
tr.,** bring together, collect.

compositō, adv., by agreement.

**comprehendō, -ere, -prehendī,
-prehensum, v. tr.,** seize, arrest.

**compressus, -a, -um, perf. part.
pass. of comprimo.**

**comprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pres-
sum, v. tr.,** suppress.

**comprendō, -ēre, -dī, -sum, grasp;
grasp (with the mind), comprehend.**

**concedō, -cēdere, -cessī, ces-
sum, v. tr.,** leave; *superis concessit
ab oris, he left the realms above.*

concidō, -ere, -dī, no sup., fall down
(*cado*).

**conciō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v.
tr.,** win over, reconcile.

concilium, -ī, N., a meeting, as-
sembly; *habere concilium, to hold
a meeting* (c. iv, 19).

**conclamō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v.
intr.,** shout, or cry out together.

**concrescō, -crēvī, -crētum, v.
intr.,** grow together.

**concrētus, -a, -um, perf. part. pass.
of concreasco, used as an adj.,** matted.

**concurrō, -currere, -curri, -cur-
sum, v. intr.,** run together, rush.

concursum, -ūs, M., attack; *ex eo
concursum, from that collision* (c. v, 10).

**concutiō, -ere, -cussi, -cussum,
shake vigorously (cum quatio).**

condensus, -a, -um, adj., very thick.

condiciō, -ōnis, F., terms.

condō, -ere, -didi, -ditum, v. tr.,
found, establish, build.

**condōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v.
tr.,** forgive, pardon.

Condrusi, -ōrum, pl., M., the *Con-
drusi*, a people of north-eastern Gaul, on
the right bank of the Meuse (*Meuse*) in
the district of the modern *Namur* and
Liège.

**condūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum,
v. tr.,** bring together, hire.

**conferciō, -ire, -fersī, -fertum,
v. tr.,** pack together; to cause to take
close order; *legione conferta, owing
to the legion being in close order* (c. iv, 22).

**conferō, -ferre, -tulī, collātum,
v. tr.,** bring together, gather, collect; *se
conferre, to betake oneself.*

**confertus, -a, -um, perf. part. pass.
of confercio, used as an adj. in close
array.**

confestim, adv., immediately after
the battle.

**conficiō, -ficere, -feci, -fecum,
v. tr.,** do thoroughly; *bello confecto,
when the war was over* (c. iv, 16); *rem
conficere, to complete a matter* (c. iv,
11); *itinere confecto, after the march
was made* (c. iv, 14).

**confidō, -fidere, -fusus sum,
semi-dep., v. intr.,** trust thoroughly.

**configō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum,
v. tr.,** pierce.

**confirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v.
tr.,** establish; *pace confirmata,
when peace was made* (c. iv, 23).

**confiteor, -eri, -fessus sum, con-
fessa, acknowledge (fateor).**

**configō, -ere, -fixī, -fictum,
v. tr.,** strike; *in oculo configere, to
engage in battle* (c. v, 15).

**confundō, -ere, -fudi, -fūsum,
pour together, confuse.**

congemō, -ere, -ui, no sup., groan,
deeply (CON, intensive).

**congerō, -ere, -gessi, -gestum,
heap together.**

**congrador, -gredi, -gressus
sum, v. tr.,** meet, charge; *inter se
congradi, to charge each other.*

**conjiō, -jicere, -jeci, -jectum, v.
tr.,** throw together (at a point); in
fugam conjiere, to put to flight; *se
in fugam conjiere, to betake one-
self to flight* (c. iv, 12); *culpam in ali-
quem conjiere, to cast the blame on
some one* (c. v, 27); *in vincula conji-
cere, to throw into prison* (c. iv, 27).

conjugium, -ī, N., wedlock; husband
(*jungo, root juv*).

**conjungō, -ere, -junxi, -junctum,
v. tr.,** unite, join.

conjux, -ugis, M. and F., one
joined; husband, wife, spouse (cum,
jungo).

conjūratiō, -ōnis, F., league; fa-
cere conjurationem, to form a league
(c. iv, 20).

cōnor, -āri, -ātus sum, endeavor, attempt.

consanguinitās, -ātis, F., blood-relationship, kin.

conscendō, -ere, -scendi, -scensum, v. tr., embark in, mount; in navem conscendere, to embark on a vessel (c. iv, 23; v, 7); in equum conscendere, to mount a horse.

consciūs, -a, -um, adj., conscious, knowing my purpose, agmina conscia, confederate bands.

consequor, -sequi, -secūtus (or sequūtus) sum, v. tr. dep., follow, follow up.

conserō, -ere, serui, -sertum, v. tr., join together, unite, bring together; proalium or pugnam or manum conserere, to engage in battle.

consido, -ere, -sēdi, -sessum, v. intr., settle, halt; copiae considunt, the forces encamp (c. v, 9).

consilium, -i, N., plan, design; wisdom, prudence; capere consilium, to form a plan (c. v, 8) inire consilium, to adopt a plan (c. iv, 32); communi consilio, after joint deliberation (c. v, 6); publico consilio, by a public plan (c. v, 1); consilio instituto, from carrying out his appointed plan (c. v, 4).

consimilis, -e, adj., very like, like in every particular.

consistō, -ere, -stiti, -stitum, v. intr., stand, halt; consistit in carne, it consists of flesh; in fluctibus est consistendum, they had to keep their footing among the waves (c. iv, 24), stand still.

consōlor, -āri, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep., console, comfort, cheer (c. v, 4).

conspēctus, -ūs, M., sight appearance; conspēctū in medio, amid the gazing throng.

conspiciō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum, v. tr., observe, see.

conspicor, -āri, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep., see, get a sight of, spy.

constat, -stāre, -stitit, impera. v., it is agreed, well known.

constituō, -ere, -stitui, -stitū-tum, v. tr., draw up; aciem constituere, to draw up a line of battle (c. iv, 35); hiberna constituere, to appoint the winter quarters (c. iv, 38); classem, navem constituere, to moor a fleet, a ship; die constituta, on a set day; his rebus constitutis, when this was arranged (c. v, 5).

constō, -stāre, -stiti, -stātum, v. intr., be formed; impera. constat, it is admitted, it is certain.

consuescō, -suescere, -suevi, -suetum, v. intr., become accustomed (c. v, 7, 21).

consuetūdō, -inis, F., custom, habit; ex consuetudine, according to custom (c. iv, 32).

consul, -ulis, M., a consul, one of the two chief magistrates chosen annually at Rome.

consulō, -ere, -ui, ultum, v. tr., deliberate, plan; alicui consulere, to consult for one's benefit; aliquem consulere, to ask one's advice; in aliquem consulere, to take measures against one; consulere sibi, to look after himself; civitati consulere, to take measures for the interest of the state (c. v, 3).

consultō, adv., on purpose, designedly; often de consulto; consulto cedere, to purposely retreat (c. v, 16).

consultum, -i, N., decree, resolution, decision.

consumō, -ere, -sumpsi, -sumptum, v. tr., spend, waste; tempus consumere, to waste time; aestatem consumere, to spend the summer (c. v, 4); magna parte diei consumpta, after a great part of the day had been spent (c. v, 9).

contemnō, -ere, -tempsi, -temptum, v. tr., despise, hold in contempt.

contendō, -ere, -tendi, -tentum, v. intr., hasten to, push forward; in fines Sugambrorum contendit, he marches into the territories of the Sugambri (c. iv, 18; iv, 7; v, 9); remis contendere, to strive at the oars (c. v, 8); dispari proello contendere, to fight an unequal battle (c. v, 16).

contentiō, -ōnis, F., struggling; gaining a battle.

contentus, -a, -um, adj. (with abl.), content with.

contestor, -āri, -ātus sum, v. dep., invoke.

contexō, -ere, -texui, -textum, v. tr., weave, bind together.

contextus, -a, -um, perf. part. pass. of contexo, used as an adj., interwoven.

conticescō, -ere, -ticui, no sup., v. intr., be silent.

continens, -ntis (properly pres. part. of contineo, used as an) adj., with terra understood; literally, the uninterrupted land, the continent, i. e., Gaul, bella continentia, uninterrupted wars (c. v, 11).

- contineō, -ēre, -tinui, -tentum, v. tr.,** hold together, bound, restrain, hem in; **se continere,** to keep themselves together (c. iv, 34); **civitatem in officio continere,** to keep the state loyal (c. v, 3); **in officio continere,** to keep him loyal (c. v, 7).
- contingō, -ere, -tigi, -tactum, v. tr.,** touch, extend to, reach.
- continuus, -a, -um, adj.,** continuous.
- contorqueō, -ēre, -torsi, -ortum, v. tr.,** hurl vigorously.
- contrā, prep. (with acc. only),** against, opposite to; **contra Gallias,** facing the divisions of Gaul (c. iv, 20); **contra Galliam,** facing Gaul, i.e., France (c. v, 18).
- contrā, adv.,** contrary to; **contrā atque esset dictum,** contrary to what had been said (c. iv, 13).
- contrahō, -ere, -traxi, tractum, v. tr.,** draw together, collect.
- contrārius, -a, -um, adj.,** opposite, contrary.
- convellō, -ere, -velli, -vulsum, v. tr.,** rend, tear away.
- conveniō, ire, -veni, -ventum, v. tr. and intr.,** come together, assemble; with acc., interview, meet.
- conventus, -ūs, M.,** an assembly, assize; **conventum peragere,** to hold an assize (c. v, 1).
- convertō, -ere, -verti, -versum, v. tr.,** turn, turn about; **in fugam convertere,** to turn in flight; **animi conversi,** our feelings were changed.
- convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.,** summon, assemble.
- convolvō, -ere, volvi, -volūtum, v. tr.,** roll together.
- coorior, -oriri, -ortus sum, v. intr. dep.,** of a storm; arise, spring up.
- cōpia, -ae, F.,** abundance, plenty, pl., **copiae,** forces, supplies; **summis copiis,** with all his forces (c. v, 17); **copias instruere,** to draw up troops (c. v, 18).
- cor, cordis, N.,** heart.
- cōram, prep. (with abl.),** face to face with, in presence of; **cōram populo,** in presence of the people; **cōram perspicit,** he sees in person (c. v, 11).
- Coroebus, -i, M.,** Coroebus, son of Mygdon, a suitor of Cassandra.
- corpus -oris, N.,** body.
- corripō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum, v. tr.,** seize violently, carry off.
- corrumpō, -ere, -rūpi, -ruptum, v. tr.,** break in pieces, destroy, ruin, bribe.
- Cōrus (or Caurus), I, M.,** the N.-W. wind.
- coruscus, -a, -um, adj.,** gleaming.
- cotidianus, -a, -um, adj.,** daily.
- cotidie, adj.,** daily.
- costa, -ae, F.,** rib.
- Cotta, -ae, M.,** see Arunculeius.
- Crassus, -i, M.,** Marcus Licinius Crassus, surnamed Dives (the Rich), was a member of the First Triumvirate along with Caesar and Pompey (60 B.C.). He fell at Carrhae, 53 B.C. in a war against the Parthians.
- crāter, -ēris, M.,** mixing-bowl (*κράτης κεράριον*).
- crēber, -bra, -brum, adj.,** numerous, frequent.
- crēdō, -ere, -didi, -ditum, v. tr. and intr.,** trust, believe.
- crecō, crescere, crevi, crētum, v. intr.,** increase, grow, grow up.
- crētus, -a, -um, pref. part. pass. of** crecō, sprung from
- Crēusa, -ae, E.,** Creusa, wife of Aeneas.
- crimen, -inis, N.,** charge (Verg. 65).
- crinis, -is, F.,** hair; **passis crinibus,** with hair all loose.
- cruciātus, -ūs, M.,** torture.
- crūdēlis, -e, adj.,** cruel, hard-hearted.
- cruentus, -a, -um, adj.,** bloody.
- culmen, -inis, N.,** roof.
- culpa, -ae, F.,** blame; **culpam conicere,** to throw the blame (c. iv, 27).
- culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, blame, hold guilty (culpa).**
- cum, prep. (with abl.),** with, along with; enclitic with me, te, se, nobis, vobis, quibus, as mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum, quibuscum.
- cum (also written quum), conj.,** when, after, since, although; **cum... tum, both...and, cum (or quum) primum,** as soon as.
- cumulus, -i, M.,** heap.
- cunctor, -ari, -ātus sum, v. dep.,** delay, hesitate, doubt.
- cunctus, -a, -um, adj.,** all together, in a body.
- cupidē, adv.,** eagerly.
- cupidō, -inis, F.,** desire.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



dēgener, -eris, adj., unworthy of the race, degenerate (de, "from"; genus, "race").

dēinceps, adv., one after the other, in succession, in turn

dēinde, adv., thereafter, afterwards, then, next.

Dēiphobus, -i, M., *Deiphobus*, son of Priam.

dēlātus, see **dēfero**.

dēlabor, lābi, lapsus sum, v. dep., slip.

dēlectus, -a, -um, adj., chosen.

dēlecta corpora virum = **dēlectos viros**

dēligō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., fasten; **navem ad ancoram dēligere**, to anchor.

dēligō, -ere, -lēgi, -lectum, v. tr., choose, select, levy.

dēlitescō, -litescere, -litui, no sup., v. intr., lie hid, lie in ambush.

dēlubrum, -i, N., shrine.

dēmens, -ntis, M., foolish

dēmetō, -ere, -messui, -messum, v. tr., cut down, reap.

dēmigrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr., move from, depart from, emigrate.

dēminuō, -ere, -minui, -minutum, v. tr., lessen, impair.

dēmittō, -ere, -misi, -missum, v. tr., send down; **se animo demittere**, to lose heart; **demissum lapsi per funem**, gliding down by a hanging rope

dēmō, -ere, dempsi, demptum, take away (de-emo).

dēmōstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., point out, show, state, mention; explain.

dēmōror, -āri, -ātus sum, keep waiting, delay.

dēni, ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., companies of ten (c. v, 14).

dēnique, adv., at last, finally; in a word, in short.

densus, -a, -um, adj., thick, closely packed, crowded.

dēnuntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., announce, declare, threaten, order.

dēpascor, -pasci, -pastus sum, v. dep., feed upon

dēperō, -perire, -peri (perivi), no sup., v. intr., be lost, perish.

dēponō, -ponere, -posui, -positum, v. tr., lay aside, cast away; **animam deponere**, to relinquish his life;

spem deponere, to give up hope (c. v, 19).

dēprecor, -āri, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep., beg for mercy; **recusandi aut deprecandi causa**, for the purpose of denying the fact or of begging him for mercy (c. v, 6).

dēscendō, -ere, -di, -sum, go down, descend (scando, "climb").

dēserō, -serere, -serui, -sertum, v. tr., desert, leave.

dēsertus, -a, -um, adj., deserted.

dēsiderō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., wish for, long for, want; **neque ulla omnino navis desideratur**, not a single ship is lost at all (c. v, 23).

dēsiliō, -ire, -silui, -sultum, v. intr., leap down, dismount.

dēsino, -sinere, -sivi, (-sili), -situm, v. intr., leave off, cease, stop.

dēsisto, -ere, -stiti, -stitum, v. intr., leave off, give over, cease from; **proelio desistere**, to give up the battle; **sententia desistere**, to give up the notion.

dēstinō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., appoint.

dēsuescō, -ere, -suevi, -suetum, render unaccustomed; **desuetus**, unaccustomed.

dēsum, -esse, -fui, v. intr., be wanting, fail, be lacking.

dēsuper, adv., from above.

dēterreō, -ēre, -terrui, -territum, v. tr., frighten, frighten off.

dētineō, -ēre, -ui, -tentum, hold or keep back; detain (de, teneo).

dētrimentum, -i, N., loss, damage.

deus, -i, M., a god.

dēvolvō, -volvere, -volvi, -volutum, v. tr.; roll down.

dexter, -tra, -trum, adj., right, on the right hand.

dextera or **dextra** (with manus understood), adj., the right hand.

dico, dicere, dixi, dictum, v. tr., say, speak, tell, appoint; **causam dicere**, to plead a cause; **de quo ante ab nobis dictum est**, of whom we have made mention before (c. v, 6); **mirabile dictu**, wonderful to relate

dictum, -i, N., word, order, command.

diēs, -is, M. or F. (in sing.), M. (in pl.), day.

differō, differre, distuli, dilatatum, v. tr., spread, scatter; put off,

- delay; *inter se differre*, to differ from each other; *multum differunt*, they differ greatly (c. v, 14).
- difficultās, -ātis, F.**, difficulty, trouble.
- diffugiō, -fugere, -fūgi, -fugitum, v. intr.**, flee in different directions.
- digerō, -ere, -gessi, -gestum, v. tr.**, expound.
- dignitās, -ātis, F.**, splendor; *tribuere dignitatem*, to treat with respect (c. v, 7).
- dignus, -a, -um, adj.**, worthy of deserving.
- digredior, -i, -gressus sum, de-** part (*dis, gradior*).
- dijūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.**, decide, determine.
- dilectus, -ūs, M.**, levy.
- dilectus, -a, -um, adj.**, chosen.
- diligō, -ere, -lexi, -lectum, v. tr.**, value, esteem, love.
- dimicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.**, fight; *cum dimicaretur*, since the battle was fought (c. v, 16).
- dimidium, -i, N.**, middle, half; *dimidio minor*, half the size (c. v, 13).
- dimitto, -ere, -misi, -missum, v. tr.**, send in different directions.
- Diomēdēs, -is, M.**, *Diomedes*, a famous Greek hero, son of Tydeus.
- diripiō, -ere, -ui, -reptum, v. tr.**, tear asunder; plunder (*rapio*).
- dirus, -a, -um, adj.**, fearful, terrible, dread.
- dis**, (abbreviated *di-*), inseparable prefix, apart, asunder, in pieces.
- dis, ditis, adj.**, rich; comp., *ditior*; sup., *ditissimus*.
- discēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, v. intr.**, depart, withdraw; *ab armis discedere*, lay down arms; *ab signis discedere*, to desert their standards (c. v, 16).
- discessus, -ūs, M.**, departure.
- discō, discere, didici, no sup.**, v. tr. and intr., learn.
- discors, -cordis, adj.**, different.
- disjiciō, -ere, -jēci, -jectum, v. tr.**, dash apart, destroy (*jacio, throw*).
- dispār, -paris, adj.**, unequal, unlike; *dispari proelio*, in an unequal contest (c. v, 16).
- dispergō, -ere, -spersi, -persum, v. tr.**, scatter, disperse.
- dispersus, -a, -um** (perf. part. pass. of *dispergo*, used as an) adj., scattered.
- dispōnō, -ere, -posui, -positum, v. tr.**, set in order, draw up (of forces).
- dispositus, -a, -um, perf. part. pass.**, arranged.
- distribuō, -ere, -tribui, -tributum, v. tr.**, assign, distribute.
- districtus, -a, -um, (perf. part. pass. of *distingo*, used as an) adj.**, occupied with, busy.
- diū, adv.**, long, for a long time; comp., *diūtius*; sup., *diūtissimē*.
- diurnus, -a, -um, adj.**, by day.
- diva, -ae, F.**, goddess.
- divellō, -ere, -velli, -vulsum, v. tr.**, separate.
- diversus, -a, -um, (perf. part. pass. of *diverto* used as an) adj.**, in different directions; some one way, some another way.
- dives, -itis, adj.**, rich; comp., *divitior*; sup., *divitissimus*.
- Diviciō, -ōnis, M.**, *Divico*, chief of the Helvetii, who led an army against Cassius, B.C. 107, and headed an embassy to Caesar, B.C. 58.
- dividō, -ere, divisi, divisum, v. tr.**, divide, separate.
- divinus, -a, -um, adj.**, divine.
- divus, -i, M.**, = *deus*, god.
- dō, dare, dedi, datum, v. tr.**, give; *in fugam dare*, to put to flight (c. iv, 28); *dare operam*, to take pains (c. v, 7); *dare arbitros*, to appoint judges (c. v, 1); *vela dare*, set sail; *vitam dare*, to grant him his life; *ruinam dare*, to fall in ruins; *dare poenas*, to be punished.
- doceō, docēre, docui, doctum, v. tr.**, teach, inform, point out.
- doctor, -ōris, M.**, a teacher.
- doctrina, -inae, F.**, teaching, learning, knowledge.
- doctus, -a, -um, (perf. part. pass. of *doceo* used as an) adj.**, learned, experienced.
- doleō, dolēre, dolui, dolitum, v. intr. and tr.**, grieve, be grieved.
- Dolopēs, -um, M., pl.**, *Dolopes*, a tribe of southern Thessaly.
- dolor, -ōris, M.**, grief, pain; *hoo dolore exardescere*, to be aroused through grief of this (c. v, 4).
- dolus, -i, M.**, craft, fraud; *per dolum*, by deceit (c. iv, 13).
- domesticus, -a, -um, adj.**, domestic; *bellum domesticum*, civil war (c. v, 2).

dominatus, -us, M., tyranny.
dominor, -ari, -atus sum, hold sway.
Domitius, -i, M., *Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus*, consul with Appius Claudius, a.c. 54. He was a staunch aristocrat, and brother-in-law of Marcus Cato. He fell at Pharsalia, a.c. 48, by the hand of Antony.
domō, -āre, -ui, -itum, v. tr., tame, subdue.
domus, -us, F., a house, home; **domi**, at home; **domum**, home; **domo**, from a home.
dōnec, conj., till, until.
dōnō, -āre, -avi, -atum, v. tr., give, present.
dōnum, -i, N., gift, present.
Dōricus, -a, -um, adj., *Doric* = *Grecian*.
dormiō, -ire, -ivi, -itum, v. intr., sleep, rest.
dracō, ōnis, M., serpent.
dubius, -a, -um, adj., doubtful, uncertain.
ducenti, -ae, -a, card. num. adj., two hundred.
dūcō, dūcere, duxi, ductum, v. tr., lead, draw; **ductus**, chosen; **gemitus ducere**, utter groans.
ductor, -ōris, M., leader.
dūdum, adv., a while ago, lately.
dulcis, -e, adj., sweet.
dum, conj., until
Dumnorix, -igis, M., *Dumnorix*, chief of the Aedui, and brother of Divitiacus. He was always hostile to the Romans, and was killed while trying to escape from Caesar (c. v, 7).
duo, -ae, -o, num. adj. pl., two.
duodecim, indecl. num. adj., twelve.
duodēni, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., twelve at a time, companies of twelve (c. v, 14).
duplicō, -āre, -avi, -atum, v. tr., double; **numerum obsidum duplicavit**; he demanded double the number of hostages (c. iv, 38).
dūrō, -āre, -avi, -atum, v. tr., harden, make hard.
Dūrus, see Laberius.
dūrus, -a, -um, adj., hard, severe, difficult.
dux, ducis, M., leader, general, guide.
Dymās, -antis, M., *Dymas*, a Trojan.

E

ē (ē before consonants; ex, generally before vowels, sometimes before consonants); prep. (with abl.); from, out of, in accordance with, in consequence of, on; **una ex parte**, on one side, **ex equo**, on horseback, **ex itinere**, on the march; **ex litteris**, in accordance with the despatch (c. iv, 38); **ex usu**, of advantage (c. v, 6); **ex hac fuga protinus**, immediately after this defeat (c. v, 17); **duabus ex partibus**, on two sides (c. v, 21).

Eburōnēs, -um, pl. M., *Ekurones*, a Belgic tribe, living between the Meuse and the Rhine, dependents of the Treveri.

edax, -ācis, adj., consuming, devouring (*edo*).

ecce, interj., lo! behold!

ēdisserō, -ere, -ui, -tum, v. trans., tell.

ēducō, -ere, -duxi, -ductum, v. tr., lead out, lead forth; raise aloft.

efforō, efferre, extuli, ēlātum, v. tr., bring forth.

efficiō, -ficere, -feci, -fectum, v. tr., effect, make; **opus efficere**, to complete a work; with *ut* and subjunctive, cause that; **reliquis ut navigari commode posset, effecit**, he caused that it might be suitably sailed with the rest, *i. e.*, he had the rest put in sailing trim (c. iv, 81).

effor, -ari, -atus sum, speak out, utter.

effigēs, -ei, F., image.

effugiō, -fugere, -fugi, -fugitum, v. tr. and intr., escape.

effugium, -i, N., escape.

effulgeō, -ēre, -fulsi, no sup., shine forth.

effundō, -ere, -fudi, -fūsum, v. tr., pour out; **se effundere**, to spread out, scatter.

egens, -tis, adj., needy.

egēnus, -a, -um, adj., needy, in want, destitute.

egeō, -ēre, -ui, no sup., am needy; with *abl.*, am in need of.

ego, mei, pers. pron. I; *pl. nōs, we*.

ēgredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, v. intr. dep., go out; disembark; **navigari, to disembark** (c. iv, 21; 23).

ēgregiō, adv., admirably, splendidly.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of
human knowledge in
797,885 volumes

Instant access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

excūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., justify (of a charge).

exemplum, -ī, N., an example, sample, pattern.

exēō, -īre, -īī (ivī), -itum, v. intr., go out.

exercēō, -āre, -erōul, -erōitum, v. tr., exercise, train.

exercitātiō, -ōnis, F., training, practise, exercise.

exercitus, -ūs, M., a trained band; an army; **exponere exercitum,** to land an army (c. v, 9).

exhālō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., breathe out.

exigō, -ere, -ēgi, -actum, v. tr., drive out, pass the time; **exacta hieme,** when winter had passed, at the end of winter.

exiguitās, -ātis, F., shortness.

exiguus, -a, -um, adj., small, scanty.

exilium, -ī, N., exile.

existimātiō, -ōnis, F., reputation.

existimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., suppose, think, consider.

exitium, -ī, N., destruction.

exilis, -is, adj., ruinous.

exitus, -ūs, M., issue, end.

exoptātus, -a, -um, perf. part. pass. of exopto, used as an adj., longed for

exoptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., wish, desire.

exorior, -oriri, -ortus sum, v. dep., arise.

expediō, -īre, -īvī(ii), -itum, v. tr., extricate.

expeditus, -a, -um, adj., lightly equipped, free, unencumbered, without baggage; **ad usum expeditior,** more efficient for service (c. iv, 25); **expeditus receptus,** a quick retreat (c. iv, 33); **legiones expeditae,** legions without baggage (c. v, 2).

expellō, -ere, -puli, -pulsum, v. tr., drive out, expel.

expendō, -ere, -pendī, -pensum, v. tr., pay.

experior, -iri, -pertus sum, v. dep., try, test.

explēō, -āre, -plēvī, -plētum, v. tr., fill up.

explīcō, -āre, -āvī, (plīcul), -plīcātum (-plīcītum), v. tr., set forth, tell

explōrātor, -ōris, M., scout, spy.

explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., investigate, reconnoitre.

expōnō, -ere, -posui, -positum, v. tr., place out, deploy; disembark; **expositae hostium copiae,** the forces of the enemy deployed (c. iv, 23); **cum essent expositi milites,** when the forces had landed (c. iv, 37); **exposito exercitu,** when the army had landed (c. v, 9).

expromō, -ere, -prompsi, -promptum, v. tr., utter

expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., take by storm, capture.

exanguis, -anguis, adj., pale.

excindō, -ere, -cidi, -cissum, v. tr., destroy

expectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., wait for, await; **in ancoris expectare,** to wait at anchor (c. iv, 23); wait for; long expected.

extinguō, -ere, -nixī, -inctum, v. tr., extinguish, kill.

extō, stare, no perf., no sup., v. intr., be out; **capite solō ex aqua extare,** to have their heads alone out of the water (c. v, 17).

exsuperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., tower above, conquer.

exultans, -ans, adj., rejoicing.

exultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., leap forth.

exterus, -a, -um, adj. (rarely used in positive), outside, foreign, strange; comp., exterior; sup., extremus.

extemplō, adv., immediately.

extrā, prep. (with acc.), outside of, beyond.

extrahō, -trahere, -traxī, -tractum, v. tr., draw out, withdraw; **id facile extrahere,** to waste this easily (c. v, 22).

extrēmus, -a, -um, adj. (sup. of exterus) of place or time, last; **hieme extrema,** at the end of winter; **extremi,** rear-guard (c. v, 10); **flamma extrema,** expiring flame; **audere extrema,** to dare the greatest dangers; **extrema in morte,** death's extremity.

exuō, -ere, -ui, -ūtum, v. tr., strip off, deprive; **exutas vinculis palmas,** her hands freed from chains.

exuviae, -arum, F. pl., spoils.

ēvincō, -vincere, -vici, -victum, v. tr., overcome

F.

faber, -bri, M., a workman, wright.

fabricātor, -oris, M., contriver

fabricō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., make contrive.

faciēs, -ēī, F., appearance.

facile, adv., easily, readily; **comp.,** **facilius**; **sup.,** **facillimē.**

facilis, -e, adj., easy.

faciō, facere, feci, factum, v. tr., do, make; **magni facere,** to value highly; **pluris facere,** to value more highly; **castra facere,** to pitch a camp; **iter facere,** to make a march; **vim facere,** to do violence; **imperata facere,** to obey commands; **facere periculum,** to make an attempt (c. iv, 21); **iter facere,** to make a march (c. iv, 32); **bellum populo Romano facere,** to make war against the Roman people (c. iv, 22); **proello facto,** after the battle was fought (c. iv, 27); **rebellionem facere,** to renew the war (c. iv, 30); **vim facere,** offer violence (c. v, 7); **pro sano facere,** to act as a sane man (c. v, 7). (For passive see **fiō.**)

factum, -i, N., action, deed.

facultas, -atis, F., opportunity.

fāgus, -i, F., beech tree.

fallō, -ere, fecelli, falsum, v. tr., deceive.

falsus, -a, -um, adj., false.

fama, -ae, F., renown

famulus, -i, M., attendant.

fandō, abl. of gerund of for, speak.

fās (indecl. noun), N., right; lawful.

fastigium, -i, N., roof.

fātālis, -e, adj., deadly.

fateor, fatēri, fassus sum, v. dep., confess.

fātum, -i, N., destiny, fate.

fātur, 3rd. sing. pres. indic. of (for) fari, fatus sum, speak.

faucēs, -iūm, F. pl., jaws.

fax, facis, F., torch.

fēliciter, adv., luckily, prosperously.

fēmineus, -a, -um, adj., pertaining to a woman.

fenestra, -ae, F., window.

fere, adv., almost, nearly.

feriō, -ire, no perf., no sup., v. tr., strike.

ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, v. tr., bring, bear, carry, endure; **fertur,** it is said; **auxilium ferre,** to bring aid; **injurias ferre,** to inflict wrongs; **legem ferre,** to propose a law; **consuetudo fert,** the custom admits of

(c. iv, 32); **in petum ferre,** to make an attack (c. iv, 35); **graviter ferre,** to be annoyed (c. v, 6); **ut fert illorum opinio,** according to their ideas (c. v, 13).

ferreus, -a, -um, adj., of iron, iron.

ferrum, -i, N., iron; **acies ferri,** the edge of the sword

ferus, -a, -um, adj., fierce, bold.

feasus, -a, -um, adj., weary.

festinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., hasten.

festus, -a, -um, adj., festive.

fētus, -a, -um, adj., pregnant, filled with.

fictus, -a, -um (perf. part. pass. of fingō used as an) adj., idle, feigned, false.

fidēlis, -e, adj., faithful, trusty.

fidens, -ntis, adj., confident.

fidēs, -ēī, F., faith, loyalty; **in fidem recipere,** to receive under one's protection (c. iv, 22); **fidem sequi,** to be loyal to (c. v, 20); **eos in fidem recipere,** to admit them to his protection (c. iv, 27); **fidem interponere,** to pledge his word (c. v, 6); promise.

fido, fidere, fisis sum, v. semi-dep., trust, confide.

fidūcia, -ae, F., trust, confidence.

fidus, -a, -um, adj., trustworthy.

figō, -ere, fixi, fixum, v. tr., fasten; impress

figūra, -ae, F., form, shape.

filia, -ae, F., daughter.

filius, -i, M., son.

figō, fingere, finxi, fictum, v. tr., form, shape, make.

finis, -is, M. and F., end, limit; pl. **fines, M.,** boundaries, territories.

finitimus, -a, -um, adj., bordering upon, adjoining; in pl. **finitimi, -orum,** neighbors.

fiō, fieri, factus sum (pass. of faciō), become, take place; **fit,** it happens; **certior fieri,** to be informed; **non sine causa fieri,** to be not without a reason (c. v, 6).

firmiter, adv., firmly; **firmiter insistere,** to stand firmly, to get a good footing (c. iv, 36).

firmus, -a, -um, adj., strong.

fixus, -a, -um, adj., fixed, resolute.

flagitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., demand, ask earnestly.

flāgrō, -āre, -vī, -ātum, v. intr., blaze.

flamma, -ae, F., flame.

flectō, -ere, flexi, flexum, v. tr., bend, turn.

flēō, flēre, flēvi, flētum, v. intr., weep.

flētus, -ūs, M., tears, weeping.

flō, flāre, flāvi, flātum, v. intr., blow.

fluctus, -ūs, M., flood, wave.

flūmen, -inis, N., river.

fluō, fluere, fluxi, fluxum, v. intr., flow, ebb.

fluvius, -i, M., river.

fodiō, fodere, fodi, fossum, v. tr., dig.

foedō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., mar, defile.

fontis, fontis, M., fountain.

for, fārī, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep., speak, say.

fore=futurum esse (fut. inf. of sum).

forem=essem.

foris, -is, F., door, gate.

forma, -ae, F., form, "ape.

formidō, -inis, F., dread; **formidine capti,** overcome with fear.

formō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., shape.

fors, -tis, F., chance, luck; used adverbially = **forte.**

fortasse, adv., perhaps, by chance.

forte, adv., perhaps, by chance.

fortis, -is, adj., strong, brave.

fortiter, adv., courageously, bravely.

fortūna, -ae, F., success, good fortune (Verg. 385).

Fortūna, -ae, F., *Fortuna*, goddess of Fortune

fossa, -ae, F., ditch, trench.

fractus, -a, -um, perf. part. pass. of frango, broken.

fragor, -ōris, M., breaking, crash.

frangō, frangere, frēgi, fractum, v. tr., break.

frāter, -tris, M., a brother.

fraus, fraudis, F., deceit, deception.

frenitus, -ūs, M., noise, din (of battle).

fretum, -i, N., strait, see

frigidus, -a, -um, ad^o, cold.

frigus, -oris, N., cold.

frons, frondis, F., bough.

frūgēs, -um, pl. F., meal; **salsae fruges,** salted cake, used in sacrifices.

frūmentārius, -a, -um, adj., pertaining to corn; **res frumentaria,** a supply of corn; **inopia frumentaria,** want of corn.

frumentor, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. dep., set. h corn, forage.

frumentum, -i, N., corn.

frustrā, adv., without effect, in vain.

fuga, -ae, F., flight; **in fugam dare,** to put to flight (c. iv, 26); **ex fuga recipere,** to recover from panic (c. iv, 27).

fugiō, fugere, fugi, fugitum, v. tr. and intr., flee, flee from, run away.

fugitivus, -a, -um, adj., fleeing; as a noun, **fugitivus, -i, M.,** a runaway slave.

fulgeō, ēre or ere, fulsi, no sup., v. intr., gleam, shine.

fulmen, -inis, N., thunderbolt.

fulvus, -a, -um, adj., tawny.

fūmō, -āre, no perf., no sup., v. intr., smoke.

fūmus, -i, M., smoke.

funda, -ae, F., a sling.

fundamentum, -i, N., foundation.

funditor, -oris, M., a slinger.

fundō, fundere, fudi, fūsum, v. tr.; pour forth; **exercitum fundere,** to rout an army.

fundus, -i, M., bottom.

fūnis, -is, M., rope, cable.

fūnus, -eris, N., death.

furens, -tis, adj., raving; **furentibus Austris,** when the south winds rage; **sponsa furens,** his prophetic betrothed.

furiatus, -a, -um, adj., frenzied.

furō, -ere, -ui, no sup., rave.

furor, -ōris, M., rage, madness, fury.

furtim, adv., by stealth.

futūrus, -a, -um, fut. part. of sum; **res futurae or futura (neut. pl.),** the future.

G

Galba, -ae, M., *Galba*; Servius Galba, great-grandfather of the Emperor Galba. He served under Caesar in Gaul, and was praetor 54 B.C. After Caesar's death he served against Antony in the war of Mutina, 43 B.C.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



she is called *Tyndaris*, i.e., daughter of *Tyndarus*.

hæreditas, -atis, F., heirship, inheritance.

heri, adv., yesterday.

heu, interj., alas!

Hesperius, -a, -um, adj., Western.

hiberna, -orum, pl. N. (properly neut. I. of the adj., *hibernus* agreeing with *castra* understood), winter quarters. *hiberna constituere*, to appoint the position of the winter quarters (c. iv, 28; *hiberna circumire*, to inspect the winter quarters (c. v, 2).

Hibernia, -ae, F., Ireland.

hic, *haec*, *hæc*; dem. pron. this, he, she, it; *hic* . . . *ille*, the latter . . . the former.

hic, adv., here; then, hereupon.

hiemô, -are, -avi, -atum, v. intr., winter, pass the winter.

-*hiema*, -is, F., winter, storm.

hinc, adv., hence from this time.

Hispania, -ae, F., Spain.

hodiê, adv., to-day (= *hoc diê*).

homô, -inis, M. or F., a human being; man; pl. *hominês*, inhabitants.

hōra, -ae, F., hour. The Romans divided the period between sunrise and sunset into twelve equal parts, each of which was called *hora*; so also with the night. The length of each *hora* would depend on the season of the year.

horrendus, -a, -um, adj., dreadful.

horreô, -ere, -ui, no sup., v. tr. and intr., dread, shudder at.

horresco, -ere, horruî, no sup., begin to shudder.

horribilis, -e, adj., dreadful, frightful.

horridus, -a, -um, adj., dreadful.

horror, -oris, M., dread.

hortor, -ari, -atus sum, v. tr., dep., urge, cheer, encourage, incite.

hospes, -pitis, M., visitor, guest, friend, host.

hostia, -ae, F., a victim offered in sacrifice.

hostis, -is, M., an enemy.

hūc, adv., hither, here, to this place.

hūjūmodi, of this kind, of this sort.

hūmānus, -a, -um, adj., civilized.

humerus, -i, M., shoulder.

humî (locative), on the ground.

humilis, -e, adj., low, poor, humble.

humilitas, -atis, F., lowness, lowness in the water (c. v, 1).

humus, -i, F., ground.

Hypania, -is, M., *Hypanis*, a Trojan.

I

ibi, adv., in that place, there.

ictus, -us, M., stroke.

Ida, -ae, F., Mt. *Ida*, near Troy.

Idaeus, -a, -um, adj., belonging to Mt. *Ida*, *Idaeus*.

idcirco, adv., on this account, for this reason, therefore.

idem, *eadem*, *idem*, dem. pro., the same.

idoneus, -a, -um, adj., fit, suitable, convenient.

igitur, conj., therefore, accordingly, then.

ignarus, -a, -um, adj., ignorant.

ignis, -is, M., fire.

ignôrô, -are, -avi, -atum, v. tr., to be ignorant of.

ignoscô, -ere, ignôvi, ignôtum, v. intr. (with dat.), pardon.

Iliacus, -a, -um, adj., of or belonging to *Ilium*, i.e., Troy.

ilicet, adv., straightway.

Ilium, -i; N. n.: *Ilium*, another name for *Troja*, i.e., Troy, though *Troja* and *Ilium* seem to have been names applied to different districts of the same city. In recent years wonderful discoveries have been made through the excavations of Dr. Schliemann in the Troad. Remains of a prehistoric city of great wealth and grandeur have been unearthed beneath the ruins of the historical city, *Ilium*, on the site of the present town of *Hissarlik*. The destruction of the Homeric *Ilium* is usually assigned to 1184 B.C. The historical *Ilium* was founded about 700 B.C.

ignôtus, -a, -um, adj., not known, unknown.

illabor, -lâbi, -latus sum, v. dep., glide into.

ille, *illa*, *illud*, dem. pro., that, that well known; he, she, it; *ille* . . . *hic*, the former . . . the latter.

illô, adv., to that place, thither; *eodem illô*, to that same place.

illudô, -ludere, -lusi, -lûsum, v. tr., mock, jeer at.

Illyricum, -i, N., *Illyricum*, a district comprising the modern *Dalmatia*, *Bosnia* and *Herzegovina*.

imâgô, -inis, F., form.

- imbellis**, -e, adj., unwarlike, useless.
- imber**, -bris, M., a shower.
- immānis**, -e, adj., vast, huge, enormous, immense.
- Immanuentius**, -i, M., *Immanuentius*, father of *Manducatus* (c. v, 20).
- immisceō**, -ere, -miscui, -mixtum, v. intr., mingle with.
- immensus**, -a, -um, adj., immense.
- immemor**, -oris, adj., unmindful.
- immittō**, -ere, -misi, -missum, v. tr., send or drive into (the enemy's line); *se immittere*, rush into.
- immixtus**, -a, -um, perf. part. pass. of *immisceō*, mingled with.
- immo**, adv., on the contrary, no indeed, yes indeed; used in answers to correct or modify either by contradicting or by strengthening.
- immolō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., sacrifice.
- impedimentum**, -i, N., hindrance; pl. *laggage* (of an army); *sarcinae*, the kit of the individual soldiers.
- impediō**, -ire, -īvi, -itum, v. tr., hamper, hinder; *religionibus impediri*, to be hampered by religious scruples (c. v, 6); *navigationem impedire*, to prevent sailing (c. v, 7); *inimis impeditis*, when their attention was distracted (c. v, 7).
- impeditus**, -a, -um, perf. part. pass. of *impediō* used as an adj., hampered, impassable; *loca impedita*, inaccessible places (c. v, 19).
- impellō**, -ere, -puli, -pulsum, v. tr., hurl forward.
- imperātor**, -ōris, M., commander-in-chief, general.
- imperātum**, -i, N., command, order.
- imperitus**, -a, -um, adj., unskilled in. *inexperientia* in (with genitive, c. iv, 22).
- imperium**, -i, N., command, authority, government; authority (c. iv, 21); power (c. v, 6); empire.
- imperō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr. (with dat.), command, order; *magnum eis numerum obsidum imperat*, he levies a large number of hostages from them (c. iv, 22; iv, 27).
- impetrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., obtain by request, obtain.
- impetus**, -us, M., attack, assault; *impetum sustinere*, to withstand an attack (c. iv, 27); *facere impetum*, to make an attack (c. v, 15).
- impius**, -a, -um, adj., wicked.
- impleō**, -ere, -plevi, -pletum, v. tr., fill up, fill.
- implicō**, -āre, -plicāvī (or -plicui), -plicitum (or -plicitum), v. tr., entwine around.
- importō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., bring or carry to; import.
- improbus**, -a, -um, adj., bad, fierce.
- improvīsus**, -a, -um, adj., unforeseen; *de improvīso*, unexpectedly, suddenly.
- imprōvidus**, -a, -um, adj., unsuspecting.
- imprōdens**, -tis, adj., not foreseeing, unwise; *imprudentibus nostris*, while our men were off their guard (c. v, 15).
- imprōdentia**, -ae, F., indiscretion, thoughtlessness.
- in**, -a, -um, sup. of *inferus*.
- in**, prep. with (1) acc. (after words signifying motion), to, into, upon, against; (2) abl. (after words signifying rest), in, at, during, among; *in hiemem*, for the winter (c. iv, 29); *in primis*, especially (c. v, 6); *in itinere*, while on the march (c. iv, 11); *in ancoris*, at anchor.
- inānis**, -e, adj., empty, vain, useless.
- incendium**, -i, N., fire.
- incendō**, -ere, -cendi, -censum, v. tr., set on fire, burn, inflame.
- inceptum**, -i, N., beginning; design (*incipio*).
- incensus**, -a, -um, perf. part. pass. of *incendō*, used as an adj., burning.
- incertus**, -a, -um, adj., uncertain; *incertis ordinibus*, when their ranks were broken (c. iv, 22); *erring* (Verg. 224).
- incidō**, -ere, -cidi, no sup., fall upon.
- incipiō**, -ere, -cepi, -ceptum, v. tr., begin, commence.
- incitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., urge, arouse, encourage; *equis incitatis*, with their horses at full gallop (c. iv, 26, 23); *remis incitare*, to row hard (c. iv, 25).
- inclémentia**, -ae, F., lack of pity, cruelty (*clemens*).
- inclūdō**, -ere, -clūsi, -clūsum, v. tr., shut in.
- inclutus**, -a, -um, adj., renowned.
- incognitus**, -a, -um, adj., unknown.
- incola**, -ae, M., an inhabitant.
- incolō**, -colere, -colui, -cultum, v. tr., live in, inhabit.

incolumis, -e, adj. safe, in safety.
incomitatus, -a, -um, adj., unaccompanied.
incommodum, -i, N., loss, disaster.
incrédibilis, -e, adj., incredible.
incumbō, -ere, -cubui, -cubitum (dat.), lean upon, press down
incursiō, -ōnis, F., inroad, invasion.
incurrō, -ere, curri (or cucurri), cursum, run into or against.
incūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., accuse, blame.
inde, adv., from that place, thence; after that, then.
indiciū, -i, N., sign, information.
indignor, āri, -ātus sum, v. dep., to be wrathful
indignus, -a, -um, adj., unworthy.
indomitus, -a, -um, adj., stubborn.
indulgeō, -ēre, -sī, -tum, with dat., yield to.
indutiæ, -ārum, F. pl., a truce, armistice.
induo, -ere, -dūi, -dūtum, v. tr., put on.
Indutiomārus, -i, M., *Indutiomārus*, a leading man among the Treveri, and rival of Cingetorix, who sided with the Romans (c. v, 2).
inēluctābilis, -e, adj., inevitable.
ineō, -ire, -iī (ivi), -itum, v. tr. and intr., enter, enter upon; **inire consiliū**, to form a plan (c. iv, 32; v, 23); **secunda inita vigilia**, at the beginning of the second watch (c. v, 23).
inermis, -e, adj., unarmed, defenceless.
iners, -ertis, adj., lifeless.
infāmia, -ae, F., ill report, infamy.
infandus, -a, -um, adj., unspeakable.
infelix, -fēlicis, adj., unhappy, unfortunate.
infensus, -a, -um, adj., hostile.
inferō, -ferre, -tuli, illātum, v. tr., carry in, bring in; **bellum hostibus inferre**, to make war on the enemy; **signa inferre**, to advance; **bello illato**, when the war was over (c. v, 12); **periculum inferebat**, bring danger (c. v, 16).
inferus, -a, -um, adj., below, lower; comp., inferior; sup., **infimus** or **imus**.
infestus, -a, -um, adj., hostile.
inficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, v. tr., stain.

infimus; see **inferus**.
infinitus, -a, -um, adj., boundless, immense.
infirmus, -a, -um, adj., weak, feeble.
infra, (1) adv., below; (2) prep. (with acc.), below, beneath.
infula, -ae, F., fillet, a white and red band of woolen stuff worn upon the forehead as a sign of consecration.
ingeminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., redouble.
ingens, -tis, adj., huge, great, vast.
ingrātus, -a, -um, adj., unthankful, thankless, ungrateful.
ingredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, v. tr., de, enter upon.
ingruō, -ere, -ingrui, no sup.; rush on.
inhibeō, -hibēre, -hibui, -hibitum, v. tr., check, restrain.
injicio, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, v. tr., throw or cast into.
inimicus, -a, -um, adj., unfriendly, hostile; a noun, a private enemy.
iniquus, -a, -um, adj., uneven; disadvantageous, unjust.
initium, -i, N., beginning, commencement; **in initio**, in the beginning.
injūria, -ae, F., wrong, outrage, injustice.
innoxius, -a, -um, adj., harmless.
innuptus, -a, -um, adj., unwed.
inopia, -ae, F., want, scarcity, poverty.
inquit, (verb defective), says he.
insānus, -a, -um, adj., mad.
insānia, -ae, F., madness.
insciens, -tis, adj., not knowing, unaware, ignorant; **Caesare insciēte**, without the knowledge of Caesar (c. v, 7).
inscius, -a, -um, adj., not knowing, ignorant of a thing.
insequor, -sequi, -secūtus (or sequūtus) sum, v. tr. dep., overtake, attack; **insequi cedentes**, to overtake the retreating enemy (c. v, 16).
insērtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., put into.
insideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, v. tr., am seated in, occupy.
insidiae, -ārum, F. pl., ambush; hence, wiles
insigne, -signis, N., badge, decoration.
insignis, -e, adj., noted, remarkable.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of
human knowledge in
797,885 volumes

Instant access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

intexō, -ere, -ui, -tum, v. tr., in-weave, interlace.
intonō, -āre, -ui, -itum, v. intr., thunder.
intorquē, -ere, -torsī, -tortum, v. tr., hurl against (see note).
Intrā prep. (with acc.), between, within.
intrōitus, -ūs, M., an entrance.
intusor, -tuēri, -tuitus sum, v. tr. dep., behold, consider, regard.
intus, adv., within.
inultus, -a, -um, adj., unavenged.
inūsitātus, -a, -um, adj., unusual; **inūsitator, somewhat novel** (c. iv, 25).
inūtilis, -e, adj., useless, unserviceable; **inūtilis ad navigandum, unseaworthy** (c. iv, 29).
invādō, -ere, -ei, -sum, v. tr., go against, attack.
invenīō, -ire, -vēni, -ventum, v. tr., come upon, find out, discover.
inventor, -ōris, m., discoverer.
invicem, adv., by turns, alternately.
invidia, -ae, F., envy, ill-will.
invisus, -a, -um, adj., hateful.
invitus, -a, -um, adj., unwilling; **se invito, against his will.**
involvō, -ere, -vi, -ūtum, enroll, enwrap.
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, dem. pro.; self, himself, herself, itself, themselves; **ipso terrore equorum, by mere terror caused by the horses** (c. iv, 33).
ira, -ae, F., anger.
irritus, -a, -um, adj., useless, unavailing.
irruō, 3, -rui, -rutum, v. intr., rush against.
is, ea, id, dem. pro. this, that, he, she, it, they; before ut, is = talis, such; with comparatives eo (abl.) the: eo magis, all the more.
iste, ista, istud, dem. pro., that, that of yours.
ita, adv., in this way, so, thus: in the following manner, therefore; **non ita magnus, not very large** (c. iv, 37).
Italia, -ae, F., Italy.
itaque, conj., and so, therefore, accordingly.
item, adv., just, so, also, in like manner.
iter, itineris, N., journey, march; **iter magnum, a forced march;** **ex itinere oppugnare, to storm by direct assault;** **ex itinere, on the march;**

iter facere, to make a march (c. iv, 32); **iter conficere, to complete a march.**

iterum, adv., again, a second time.

Ithacus, -a, -um, adj., *Ithacan* in Verg. 104.

Itius, -i, M., *Itius*, a port on the northern coast of Gaul, opposite Britain. From it Caesar sailed to Britain. It is said to be *Boulogne*, or *Wissant*.

Iūlus, -i, M., *Iulus*, son of Aeneas, also called *Aeneas*.

J

jacē, -ere, -ui, no sup., v. intr., lie, lie dead.

jacō, -ere, -avi, -atum, v. tr., throw, cast; **ancoram jacere, cast anchor** (c. iv, 28).

jacō, -ere, -avi, -atum, v. tr. (freq. from jacō), keep throwing, utter wildly.

jaculor, -ari, -atus sum, v. dep., fling, hurl.

jam, adv., now, already.

jamdudum, adv., at once.

janua, -ae, F., door.

jampridem, adv., now for a long time.

juba, -ae, F., crest.

jubeō, -ere, -jussi, -jussum, v. tr., order.

jūdicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., decide.

jugum, -i, N., yoke.

Jūlius, -i, M., see Caesar.

jūmentum, -i, N., baggage animal.

junctūra, -ae, F., joint.

jungō, -ere, -juxi, -junctum, v. tr., join.

Jūno, -ōnis, F., *Juno*, wife of Jupiter and queen of heaven.

Jūpiter, Jovis, Jovi, Jovem, Jove, M., *Jupiter*.

jūs, jūris, N., right.

jūsjūrandum, jūris jūrandi, N., an oath.

jussum, -i, N., command.

jussus, -ūs, M., command.

justus, -a, -um, adj., just.

juvenilis, -e (also juvenālis), adj., youthful.

juvenis, -is, M., a young man.

juventa, -ae, F., youth (period of).

juventūs, -ūtis, F., youth (collective noun).

juvō, -āre, jūvi, jūtum, v. tr.,
delight; nos juvat, it delights us.

juxtā, adv., and prep., next, close to.

K

Kalendae, -ārum, F., pl., the
Kalends, the first day of each month.

Karthāgō, -inis, F., Carthage, a
city of Northern Africa.

Karthāginiensis, -is, adj., a Car-
thaginian.

L

L = Lucius, a Roman praenomen.

Laberius, -i, M., Laberius; Quintus
Labertus Durus, a tribune in Caesar's
army in Gaul.

lābes, -is, F., slipping, downfall.

Labiénus, -i, M., Titus Labienus, one
of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic wars.
On the outbreak of the civil war he went
over to Pompey and fell at Munda in
Spain, 48 B.C.

labō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., totter.

labor, -ōris, M., toil, suffering, exer-
tion.

lābor, lābi, lapsus sum, v. intr.
dep., slip, go astray; propter im-
prudēntiam lābi, to fall away from
allegiance on account of thoughtlessness
(c. v, 8).

labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr.,
toil, labor, be in trouble.

labrum, -i, N., lip.

lāc, lactis, N., milk; lacte et
carne vivere, to live on milk and flesh
(c. v, 14).

Lacaena, -ae, F., Spartan woman.

lacepsō, -essere, -essāvī, -essit-
tum, v. tr., provoke, assault, assault-

lacrima, -ae, F., a tear.

lacrimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr.,
weep.

lacus, -ūs, M., lake.

laedō, laedere, laesi, laesum, v.
tr., harm, hurt, offend, injure; pro
numine laeso, for the offended deity

laetus, -a, -um, adj., joyful, glad,
pleasant.

laeva, sc. manus, left hand.

laevus, -a, -um, adj., left, left hand;
hence (1) unpropitious.

lambō, -ere, lambi, no sup., v. tr.,
lick.

lāmentābilis, e, adj., to be lam-
ented.

Lāocoön, -ontis, M., Laocoon, priest
of Apollo, though we find him sacrificing
to Neptune.

lapsō, -āre, no perf., no sup. (lābor),
slip.

lapsus, perf. part. of dep. v., lābor.

lapsus, -ūs, M., gliding.

Larissaeus, -a, -um, adj., belonging
to Larissa, a town of Thessaly; an epithet
of Achilles, who came from Larissa.

largus, -a, -um, adj., bounteous.

lassus, -a, -um, adj., faint, weary.

latē, adv., widely, broadly; longe
lateque, far and wide (c. iv, 85);
quam latissime, as widely as possible
(c. iv, 8).

latebra, -ae (rare in sing.), F., lurk-
ing place.

lateō, latēre, latui, no supine, v.
tr., lie hid, be concealed.

latus, -eris, N., side, flank; ab
latere aperto, on the exposed flank,
i.e., the right (c. iv, 25, 26).

lātus, -a, -um, adj., broad, wide.

laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.,
praise.

laurus, -ūs, F., laurel, bay-tree.

laus, -dis, F., praise.

laxō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., loose.

lēgā -ōnis, F., an embassy.

lēgā -i, M., (1) an ambassador;
(2) lieutenant-general in the army, an officer
of senatorial rank in command of different
divisions in the field, under the impera-
tor. They were appointed by the Senate
and were usually three in number, but
Caesar had ten in Gaul.

legiō, -ōnis, F., a legion; a division
of the Roman army consisting, when com-
plete, of 6,000 infantry and 200 cavalry.
The infantry was divided into ten cohorts,
each cohort into three maniples, and each
maniple into two centuries. The cavalry
consisted of ten squadrons (turmae).—
legione conferta, owing to the legion
being in close order (c. iv, 82); legioni
aliquem praeficere, to appoint one
over a legion (c. v, 1); legiones ex-
peditae, legions without baggage, or in
light marching order (c. v, 2).

legiōnārius, -a, -um, adj., of or
belonging to a legion; milites legio-
narij, common soldiers.

lēgitimus, -a, -um, adj., lawful
poena legitima, the legal penalty.

legō, legere, légi, lectum, v. tr., choose, select; read; skim over.

lēnis, -e, mild, gentle.

leō, ōnis, M., lion.

lepus, -oris, M., a hare.

lētum, -i, N., death.

levis, -e, adj., light; milites levis armaturae, light-armed soldiers.

lévis, -e, adj., smooth.

levō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., relieve, lighten.

lex, légis, F., law, terms, conditions.

liberaliter, adv., courteously, generously.

liberé, adv., freely, without restraint.

liberī, -ōrum, pl. M., children (the singular is not found except in late writers); unus ex liberis, one child.

liberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., free, acquit; **poena liberare, to relieve from punishment.**

lignum, -i, N., wood.

ligō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., bind.

limbus, -i, M., border, belt, band, girdle.

limen, -inis, N., threshold.

limōsus, -a, -um, adj., muddy, miry.

lingua, -ae, F., tongue, language.

linquō, -ere, liqui, no sup., v. tr., leave.

lis, litis, F., a dispute, law suit; litem aestimare, to estimate the amount of damages (c. v, 1).

litō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr., propitiate.

littera (or litera), -ae, F., a letter of the alphabet; pl. litterae, arum, literature, or a despatch, letter; ex litteris, in accordance with the despatch (c. iv, 38).

litus, -oris, N., water's edge, coast.

locō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., place, station; **castra locare, to pitch a camp.**

locus, -i, M., a place; pl., loca or loci; obsidium loco, as hostages (c. v, 5); in loca superiora, up the country (c. v, 8; loca temperatiora, more temperate climate (c. v, 12).

locūtus, -a, -um, perf. - part. of loquor: which see.

longaevus, -a, -um, adj., of great age, aged (longus, aevum).

longé, adv., far; with comparatives and superlatives, far, by far; longe melior, far better; longe optimus,

by far the best; longius, too far (c. v, 7); longe lateque, far and wide (c. iv, 35).

longinquus, -a, -um, adj., remote, distant.

longitūdō, -inis, F., length, extent.

longus, -a, -um, adj., long.

loquor, loqui, locūtus (or loquūtus) sum, v. tr. dep., speak.

lōrum, -i, N., thong.

lūbricus, -a, -um, adj., slippery.

Lūcifer, -i, M., Lucifer, the morning star (lux, ferō).

Lūcius, -i, M., Lucius.

lūcrum, -i, N., profit, gain, advantage.

luctus, -ūs, M. grief.

lūgeō, -āre, luxi, no sup., v. tr. and intr., lament, mourn for.

Lugotorix, -igis, M., Lugotorix, a British chief who was captured in an attack on Caesar's camp.

lūmen, -inis, N., light; eyes.

lūna, -ae, F., moon; moonlight.

lūpus, -i, M., a wolf.

lustrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., traverse; survey, scan.

lūsus, -ūs, M., sport play.

lux, lūcis, F., light; primā luce, at daybreak; ortā luce, at daybreak (c. v, 8).

Lydius, -a, -um, adj., belonging to Lydia.

M

M. = Marcus, a Roman praenomen.

Machāōn, -ōnis, M., Machaon, a Greek surgeon, son of Aesculapius.

māchina, -ae, F., engine of war.

mactō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., sacrifice.

maestus, -a, -um, adj., sad.

magis (comp. of adv. magnopere), more, rather (sup. maximé).

māgnitūdō, -inis, F., size.

magnopere, adv. (often written magno opere), greatly; comp. magis; sup. maximé, especially.

magnus, -a, -um, adj., large, great (comp. major; sup. maximus); magni, at a high price; pluris, at a greater price; maximi, at a very high price; majores natu, elders; majores, ancestors; res major, matter



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



mētor, -īri, mēsus sum, v. tr., dep., measure, measure out.

meto, metere, messui, messum, v. tr., reap.

metuō, -ere -i, metūtum, v. tr., fear.

metus, -ūs, M., fear.

meus, -a -um, poss. adj. pro.; my, mine.

micō, -āre, -ui, no sup; flash.

miles, -itis, M., a soldier.

militāris, -e, adj., of or belonging to a soldier, military; **res militaris**, military science.

militia, -ae, F., military service.

mille, adj. or noun, indecl., a thousand; pl. **millia** or **milia**.

millia passuum, miles; **mille passus**, a Roman mile, or 1,616 yards (see **passus**).

Minerva, -ae, F., *Minerva*, a Roman goddess who presided over wisdom and war.

minister, -tri, M., servant.

minor, -āri, -ātus sum, v. tr., threaten; **aliquem morte** or **alicui mortem minari**, to threaten anyone with death.

minor, -us, adj. (comp. of **parvus**; sup., **minimus**, less; as a noun, **minores** (with or without **natu**), descendants; **dimidio minor**, half the size (c. v, 13).

minuō, -ere, -ui, -minūtum, v. tr., lessen, diminish.

minus, comp. adv. of **parum** (which see), less; sup., **minimē**.

mirābilis, -e, adj., wonderful.

miror, -āri, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep., admire, wonder at.

mirus, -a -um, adj., wonderful, strange, marvellous.

miscuō, -ēre, -ui, **mixtum** or **mixtum**, v. tr., mingle, filled with confusion.

miser, -era, -erum, adj., wretched, unfortunate.

miserābilis, -e, adj., wretched.

misereor, -ēri, -ītus sum, v. intr., dep. (with genitive), feel pity for.

miserescō, -escere, no perf., no sup., v. intr. (with genitive), feel pity for.

mittō, -ere, **missi**, **missum**, v. tr., send.

mōbillitās, -ātis, F., activity, speed.

mōbilis, -e, adj., easily moved.

moderor, -āri, -ātus sum, v. tr. and intr., manage, check.

modo, adv., only, merely, at all; **modo...modo**, now...now, at one moment...at another; **non modo...sed etiam**, not only...but also; **paulum modo**, only a little.

modō; see **modus**.

modus, -i, M., a measure, amount, manner, method; **modo fluminis**, like a river; **nullo modo**, by no means; **modo oratoris**, in the capacity of an ambassador (c. iv, 27).

moenia, -ium, pl., N., walls of a city, fortifications.

mōles, -is, F., mass.

molestē, adv., with trouble, with annoyance; **res multas molestē ferre**, to be annoyed at many things.

mōlior, -īri, -ītus sum, v. dep., perform with toil, undertake.

mollis, -e, adj., smooth, soft.

Mona, -ae, F., *Mona*, the *Isle of Man*. *Anglesey*, was also called *Mona*, but its position does not answer Caesar's description (c. v, 13).

moneō, -ēre, -ui, -ītum, v. tr., advise, warn, remind.

mons, **montis**, M., mountain; **summus mons**, the top of the mountain.

monstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., point out, show.

monstrum, -i, N., prodigy, monster.

montānus, -a, -um, adj., mountain.

mora, -ae, F., delay.

morātus, -a -um, perf. part. dep., **moror**; see **moror**.

Morini, -ōrum, pl. M., the *Morini*, a people of Gallia Belgica, on the north-eastern coast in the neighborhood of *Calais*. Their chief town was *Gesoriacum*, afterwards *Bononia* (now *Boulogne*).

morior, **mori**, **mortuus sum**, v. dep., die.

moror, -āri, -ātus sum, v. intr. and tr. dep., delay.

mors, -tis, F., death.

morsus, -ūs, M., bite.

mortālis, -e, adj., mortal, human.

mōtus, -ūs, M., motion, evolution; **Galliae motus**, an uprising in Gaul (c. v, 5).

moveō, **movēre**, **mōvī**, **mōtum**, v. tr., move, set in motion; **arma movere**, to take up arms; **bellum movere**, to undertake a war; **castra movere**, to break up camp; **odia movere**, to stir up hatred.

mox, adv., presently, soon; then, afterwards.

mucrō, -ōnis, M., edge, point.

mūgītus, -ūs, M., bellowing.

multitudo, -inis, F., crowd, multitude.

multō, adv. (used before comparatives), adv., much, by much, greatly; **multo melior**, much better (comp., plus; sup., plurimum).

multum, adv. (not used before comparative, otherwise same as multo).

multus, -a, -um, adj., much, many; comp., plus; sup., plurimus.

mūnimentum, -i, N., defence, fortification.

mūniō, -ire, -ivi, -itum, v. tr., protect, fortify; **iter munire**, to build a road.

mūnitio, -ōnis, F., defence.

mūrus, -i, M., wall.

mūtō, -āre, -avi, -atum, v. tr., change, exchange.

Mycēnae, -arum, F. pl., *Mycenae*, a city of Argolis, of which Agamemnon was king.

Mygdonidēs, -ae, M., patronymic, son of *Mygdon*, epithet of *Coroebus*.

Myrmidonēs, -um, M. pl., *Myrmidons*, a people of Thessaly, followers of *Achilles*.

N

nactus, -a, -um, perf. part. dep. **nanciscor**, having obtained.

nam, conj., for; stands first in a sentence and explains some previous statement.

namque, conj., for indeed, for truly, a little more emphatic than *nam*.

nanciscor, **nancisci**, **nactus** (or **nactus**) **sum**, v. tr., dep., obtain, get.

narrō, -āre, -avi, -atum, v. tr., tell.

nascor, -ci, **natus sum**, v. intr., dep., be born (c. v, 12); be born from.

natio, -tionis, F., tribe, people, nation.

natura, -ae, F., form; **naturā**, by nature, naturally; **naturā triquetra**, triangular in form (c. v, 13).

natus, -a, -um, (perf. part. dep., used as an), adj., descended from, born from.

natus, -ūs, M., used only in the abl., by birth; **maiores natu**, ancestors; **minores natu**, descendants.

nauta, -tae, M., a sailor.

nāvālis, -e, adj., naval; **pugna navalis**, a sea-fight.

navigatio, -ōnis, F., sailing (c. iv, 26).

navigium, -i, N., a vessel, ship.

navigō, -āre, -avi, -atum, v. intr., sail.

nāvis, -is, F., a ship; **navis longa**, a ship of war; **navis oneraria**, a ship of burden; **navem tenere in ancoris**, to keep a ship at anchor; **navem conscendere**, to embark (c. iv, 23) (elsewhere in *Caesar* we find **conscendere in navem**); **navem constituere**, to moor a ship (c. iv, 24); **naves solvere**, set sail (c. v, 8); **navem subducere**, to draw a vessel on shore, to beach a vessel (c. v, 11).

ne, conj., (in final clauses) that not, lest; (after verbs of fearing) that; (after verbs of beseeching, ordering, commanding) not to.

ne, adv., not; **ne...quidem**, not... even (the emphatic word between *ne* and *quidem*, as **ne unus quidem**, not a single one); also used in negative imperative sentences, **ne hoc feceris**, don't do this.

ne, interrog. enclitic particle. In single direct questions; **ne** is not to be translated except by laying stress on the word to which it is joined, in double questions, **ne...an**, whether...or.

nebula, -ae, F., mist.

nec: see *neque*.

necessario, adv., necessarily, unavoidably.

necesse, indecl. adj. (used with *est* (+acc. and inf.)), necessary, unavoidable, inevitable, needful.

necessitas, -atis, F., need, necessity.

neque, adv., used in alternative indirect questions; or not; **annon**, is used in direct questions.

necō, -āre, -avi, -atum, v. tr., put to death, kill, destroy.

nefandus, -a, -um, adj., horrid.

nefarius, -a, -um, adj., wicked, atrocious.

nefas, indecl. N., a crime (against divine law), impious deed; **nefas est dictu**, it is wrong to say.

neglegō, -ere, -lexi, -lectum, v. tr., slight, neglect, be indifferent to, despise.

negō, -āre, -avi, -atum, v. tr., say no or not; deny, refuse; often = *dicō* **non**: **negat se esse aegrum**, he says that he is not sick.

negotium, -i, N., business matter.
nēmō, -inis (only used in the sing.; the dat. and abl. are supplied by nullus; Caesar uses only nemo, neminem), indef. pro., no one; non nemo, somebody; nemo non, everybody.
Neoptolemus, -i, M., Neoptolemus, also called Pyrrhus, son of Achilles.
Neptūnus, -a, -um, adj., founded by Neptune.
Neptūnus, -i, M., Neptune, god of the sea.
nepōs, -ōtis, M., grandson; nephew; pl., nepōtes, descendants.
nequāquam, adv., not at all, by no means.
neque, or **neq** (in Caesar **neq** is not found before vowels), conj., nor, and not; neque...neque or neq...neq, neither...nor; neq quisquam, and no one; neque quidquam, and nothing (c. iv, 20).
nequidquam (**nequiquam**), adv., in vain, to no purpose.
Nēreus (disyllable), **Nērēi**, and **Nēreos**, M., *Nereus*, a sea deity.
nesciō -scire, -scivi (or scif), -scitum, v. tr., not to know.
neu; see **neve**.
neuter, -tra, -trum (gen. neutrius, dat. neutri, adj., neither (of two)).
neve, or **neu**, conj., nor; and...not; neve...neve, or neu...neu, neither...nor.
nox, **noctis**, F., death; generally a violent death.
ni = **nisi**, conj., unless.
nihil, indecl. N., nothing.
nihilō (abl. of difference from nihilum) by nothing: nihilō tamen scius, nevertheless (c. v, 7).
nihilō minus, or **nihilominus**, adv., none the less, nevertheless.
nihilō scius, adv. (literally, otherwise by nothing; scius, comp. of secus, differently, otherwise); same meaning as nihilominus.
nihilum, -i, N., nothing; nihil aestimare, to value at nothing.
nimbus, -i, M., rain-cloud.
nimiō, adv., too much, exceedingly.
nisi, conj., if not, unless.
nitidus, -a, -um, adj., shining, bright.
nitor, niti, nisus (or nixus) sum, v. intr., dep.
nōbilitas, -atis, F., noble, noted, famous.

nōbilitas, -atis, F., nobility.
noceō, -ere, nocui, nocitum, v. intr. (with dative, hurt, harm, injure).
noctū, (an old abl. of obsolete noctus, -ūs; used as an) adv., by night, at night.
nocturnus, -a, -um, adj., of or belonging to night, nocturnal.
nōdus, -i, M., knot.
nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, no sup.; v. irreg., be unwilling, not to wish.
nōmen, -inis, N., name; reputation (see cognomen for praenomen, nomen).
nōminatim, adv., by name; nominatim evocare, to summon expressly (c. v, 4).
nōn, adv., not; usually preceding the word with which it should be construed. Before a negative word an indefinite affirmative is produced as, non nemo, somebody; non nunquam, sometimes; non nihil, something; after a negative, a general affirmative is formed, as nemo non, everybody; nunquam non, every time; nihil non, everything.
nōnāgintā, num., adj., ninety.
nōndum, adv., not yet.
nonnullus, -a, -um, adj., some; generally in pl., nonnulli, -ae, -a, several.
nonnunquam, adv., sometimes.
nōnus, -a, -um, num. ord. adj., ninth.
nōs, pl. of ego.
noscō, noscere, nōvi, nōtum, v. tr., become acquainted with, learn; pl. nōvi, I know.
noster, -tra, -trum, poss. adj. pro., our, ours, our own; pl., nostri, our troops, our men (milites understood).
nostrum or **nostri**, gen. pl. of ego.
Notus, -i, M., the South Wind = Auster (see Auster).
notus, -a, -um, (perf. part. pass. of nosco used as an) adj., known, well known.
novem, num. adj., nine.
nōvi, -isse, v. defect., know.
novitās, -atis, F., novelty, strangeness.
novus, -a, -um, adj., new, fresh, recent, strange (no comp.; sup. novissimus); agmen novissimum, the rear; agmen primum, the van; res novae, a change in affairs, a revolution.
nox, **noctis**, F., night, darkness; prima nocte, at nightfall; media



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of
human knowledge in
797,885 volumes

Instant access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

oculus, -i, M., eye.
ōdi, -isse, v. tr. defect., hate.
ōdium, -i, N., hatred.
offerō, -ferre, obtuli, oblātum, v. tr., bring before, present, offer; se obtulit hostibus, he faced the enemy; oblātī per lunam, meeting us in the moonlight; se...offerit, presents himself.
officium, -i, N., duty, allegiance; officium praestare, to do one's duty; in officio esse, to be loyal (c. v, 8); in officio manere, to remain loyal (c. v, 4); in officio continere, to keep him loyal, or in service (c. v, 7).
Olympus, -i, M., Olympus, a mountain in Thessaly, the fabled abode of the gods.
ōmen, -inis, N., omen, sign.
omnino, adv., in all, altogether, in all; after negatives, at all; nihil omnino, nothing at all; with numerals, in all; decem omnino, ten in all.
omnipotens, -tis, adj., almighty, omnipotent.
omnis, -e, adj., all, the whole; omnes ad unum, all to a man; maritima cunctis, wholly maritime, or on the sea (c. v, 14).
onerarius, -a, -um, adj., of burden, navis oneraria, a transport (c. iv, 22, 25).
onerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., load.
onus, -eris, N., load, burden.
opacus, -a, -um, shady.
opera, -ae, F., toll, aid; dare operam, to take pains (c. v, 7); multae operae, of great trouble (c. v, 11).
opimus, -a, -um, adj., rich.
opiniō, -ōnis, F., belief, notion; opiniō timoris, the impression of fear, praeter opinionem, contrary to expectation; celerius omni opinione, sooner than anyone expected; ut fert opiniō illorum, according to their ideas (c. v, 18).
oportet, -ēre, -uit, v. int., impera; it is necessary, it behoves (c. iv, 29).
oppōnō, -ere, -posui, -positum, v. tr., place against, oppose, withstand; oppositi (perf. part. pass. and as an), adj., opposing.
opportūnē, adv., favorably, suitably.
opportūnus, -a, -um, adj., fit, suitable, advantageous.
opprimō, -ere, -pressi, pressum, v. tr., burden, crush, destroy.

oppugnatiō, -ōnis, F., assault, attack.

oppugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., storm, attack.

(ops), nom. wanting; gen., opis, F., might, power, help; pl., opes, wealth, resources.

optimē: see bene.

optimus: see bonus.

optō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., wish for, desire.

opus, -eris, N., work, labor, magno opere or magnopere, greatly; quanto opere, how greatly; tanto opere or tantopere, so much, so greatly.

opus, Indecl. neut., found only in the expression opus est, erat, etc., there is or was, etc., need, it is or was necessary.

ōra, -ae, F., coast; ora maritima, sea coast (c. iv, 20).

ōrāculum, -i, N., oracle.

ōrātiō, -ōnis, F., a speech; orationem percipere, to hear a speech (c. v, 1).

orātor, -ōris, M., speaker; modo oratoris, as an ambassador (c. iv, 27).

orbis, -is, M., a circle; orbis terrarum, the circle of lands, i. e., around the Mediterranean, the whole world to the early Romans; orbe facto, forming a circle; corresponding to our forming square to resist an attack (c. iv, 27); circuit, coll.

orbis, -a, -um, adj., bereft, deprived of.

Orcus, -i, M., Orcus, the lower world, the shades; death

ordior, -iri, orsus sum, begin.

ordō, -inis, M., an arrangement; rank, line; ordines servare, to keep the ranks (c. iv, 26).

Orgetorix, -igis, M., Orgetorix, a Helvetian nobleman.

oriens, -tis, (pres. part. of orior used as an) adj., rising; sol oriens, the rising sun, hence, the east (c. v, 13).

orior, -iri, -tus sum, v. intr. dep., rise, spring from; orta luce, at day-break (c. v, 8); quibus orti ex civitatibus, and sprung from these states (c. v, 12).

ornus, -i, F., mountain ash.

ōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., pray for, beseech; magnopere orant, they earnestly ask.

os, oris, N., mouth, face.

os, ossis, N., bone.

osculum, -i, N., kiss.

ostendō, -ere, -tendi, -tensum (or tum), v. tr., tell, show, declare.

Othryadēs, -ae, M., son of Othrys = Panthos.

P

Palamédēs, -is, M., *Palamedes*, king of Euboea, a Greek who lost his life through the wiles of Ulysses.

Palladium, -i, N., the *Palladium*, an image of Pallas (Minerva), supposed to have fallen from Heaven. On its preservation depended the safety of Troy. It was carried off by Diomedes and Ulysses.

Pallas, -adis, F., *Pallas* or *Minerva*, the goddess of war, wisdom, and art.

pābulātiō, -ōnis, F., foraging, getting fodder.

pābulātor, -ōris, M., a forager.

pābulor, -āri, -ātus sum, v. dep., forage, seek forage.

pābulum, -i, N., fodder, forage.

pācātus, -ta, -tum (perf. part. pass. of paco used as an) adj., peaceful, quiet.

pācō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., subdue, pacify.

pāgus, -i, M., district, canton; the word still exists in the French *pays*, as *Pays de Calais*.

pallidus, -a, -um, adj., pale.

palma, -ae, F., palm (of the hand), hand.

palūs, -ūdis, F., marsh.

pandō, -ere, pandi, pansum or passum, v. tr., stretch, spread out, open.

Panthūs, -i (voc., Panthū), M., *Panthos*, priest of Apollo in the Trojan citadel.

pār, paris, adj., equal; *par est*, it is fit, it is proper; *par proellum*, a drawn battle; *pari spatium*, of the same extent (c. v, 13).

parātus, -a, -um (perf. part. pass. of paro used as an) adj., prepared, ready.

parcō, -ere, -peperci (or parsi), parcitum (or parsum), v. intr. (with dat.), spare.

parens, -tis, M. or F., a parent.

pārens, -tis, (pres. part. of pareo used as an) adj., obedient.

pāreō, -ēre, -ui, -itum, v. intr. (with da.), obey.

pariēs, -etis, M., a partition wall of a house.

pariter, adv., equally, evenly.

Paris, -idis; N. m.; *Paris*, also called *Alexander*, son of Priam and Heuba. When born he was exposed on Mount Ida, because his mother dreamed that she was delivered of a blazing torch, which was interpreted by the seer to signify that the child would be the destruction of Troy. Paris was brought up by shepherds, and so signalized himself in protecting the people that he obtained the name of "man defender" (ἄνδραδάς). He married the nymph Oenone. Afterwards he was chosen a judge in the dispute about the golden apple. Having awarded the prize to Venus, against Juno and Minerva, he incurred the hatred of the two latter goddesses. He went to Sparta, carried off Helen, wife of Menelaus, king of Sparta, and hence arose the Trojan war.

parma, -ae, F., small round shield.

parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., prepare, get ready, equip, procure; *bellum parare*, prepare for war (c. v, 8).

para, -tis, F., part, district, region; in ea parte, in that direction (c. iv, 52); per omnes partes, in every direction (c. iv, 38); omnibus partibus, in every quarter.

partim, adv., partly; partim... partim, partly...partly (c. v, 8).

parum, adv., too little, little; (comp. minus; sup. minimē).

parvulus, -a, -um, adj., very little, young; ab parvulo, from boyhood.

parvus, -a, -um, adj., small, trifling; (comp. minor; sup. minimus).

pasco, -ere, pasci, pastum, v. tr., feed upon.

pascor, -ci, -pastus, v. dep., feed upon.

passim, adv., in every direction.

passus, -us, M., a step, pace. As a measure of distance, two paces, reckoned from the heel to the same heel, like our two military steps, or = five Roman pedes (see pes), about 4 ft. 10½ in. English measure; mille passus = 1616 yards, or 144 yards short of the English mile.

passus, -a, -um, perf. part. pass. of pando (see pando); passis crinibus, with hair all loose.

pastor, -ōris, M., shepherd.

patefaciō, -facere, -feci, -factum, v. tr., open; pass., patefeciō, fieri, factus sum.

patens, -tis, adj., open.

pateō, -ēre, -ui, no sup., v. intr., be open, stand open, extend.
pater, -tris, M., father.
patescō, -ere, patui, v. intr., begin to be open or obvious.
patior, pati, passus sum, v. tr. dep., allow, suffer, bear.
patria, -ae, F., fatherland, native land; **patriā pellere,** to banish.
patrius, -a, -um, adj., paternal.
paucitas, -atis, F., fewness, small number (c. iv, 30, 34).
paucus, -a, -um, adj., some, few (generally in pl.); **paucis diebus,** within a few days (c. iv, 27; v, 2).
paulatim, adv., gradually.
paulisper, adv., for a short time.
paulō, adv., (abl. of *paulus*), by a little, just a little; with comparative adjectives or adverbs, a little; **paulo longius,** a little further (c. iv, 32); **paulo tardius,** a little too slowly (c. iv, 23).
paululum, adv., a little, gradually.
paulum, adv., a little.
pauper, -eris, adj., poor (comp. **pauperior,** sup. **pauperrimus**).
pavitō, -āre, -avi, -atum, v. intr., be in dread; **pavitus,** used as an adjective, trembling.
pavor, -ōris, M., fear.
pax, pācia, F., peace.
peccō, -āre, -avi, -atum, v. intr., do wrong, sin.
pectus, -oris, N., breast.
pecus, -oris, N., cattle (collectively).
pedes, -itis, M., a foot-soldier; pl. **pedites,** infantry.
pedester, -tris, -tre, adj., on foot, on land; **copiae pedestres,** land forces; **copiae navales,** naval forces; in **pedestribus proeliis,** in battles on land (c. iv, 26).
peditatus, -ūs, M., infantry (collectively).
pējor, -us, adj. (comp. of *malus*; sup., **pessimus**), worse.
pelagus, -i, N., sea.
Pelagi, -ōrum, M. pl., *Pelagi* or *Greeks*.
Pelaeus, -a, -um, adj., *Pelaeic*, *Grecian*.
Pelias, -ae, M., *Pelias*, a Trojan.
Pelidēs, -ae, M., a descendant of *Peleus* = *Neoptolemus* or *Pyrrhus*, son of *Achilles*.

pellax, -acia, adj., deceitful, false.
pellis, -is, F., skin, hide; **pellibus vestiri,** to clothe themselves with skins (c. v, 14).
pellō, -ere, pepuli, pulsum, v. tr., expel, drive out; **patriā pellere,** to exile (n. a. 1).
Pelopēus, -a, -um, adj., belonging to *Pelops*, an ancient King of *Elis*, after whom all Southern Greece was called *Peloponnesus*, or "island of *Pelops*." Hence *Grecian*.
Peloponnesus, -i, F., the *Peloponnesus* (now the *Mores*), the part of Greece south of the isthmus of *Corinth*.
penatēs, -ium, pl. M., the *Penates*, or household gods, presiding over the house and all that it contained.
pendeō, -ēre, pependi, no sup., v. intr., hang, be suspended.
pendō, -ere, pependi, pensum, v. tr., weigh out (in early times payments were made by weighing out metal, hence), pay.
Peneleus, -i, M., *Peneleus*, a leader of the *Boeotians* in the *Trojan* war.
penetrāle, -ia, N., inner part, shrine.
penitus, adv., within.
per, prep. (with *acc.*), through, by means of, by; **per omnes partes,** in every direction (c. iv, 33).
peragō, -ere, -ēgi, -actum, v. tr., accomplish, bring to an end; **conventus peragere,** to hold assizes (c. v, 2).
percipio, -cipere, -cepī, -ceptum, v. tr., take in, learn, perceive; **percipere orationem,** to hear a speech (c. v, 1).
percontatio, -ōnis, F., enquiry.
percurrō, -ere, -curri (or -curri), -cursum, v. intr., run along.
perducō, -ere, -duxi, -ductum, v. tr., complete, bring to a destination; **naves perduxit,** he brought the ships to their destination (c. v, 23).
pereō, -ire, -ii or (-ivi), -itum, v. intr., perish, die.
peregritō, -āre, -avi, -atum, v. tr., ride, ride through.
pererrō, -āre, -avi, -atum, v. tr., wander over.
perferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, v. tr., carry, bring, report; endure; **consilio perlato,** after their plan was reported (c. iv, 21).
perfidia, -ae, F., faithlessness, treachery.
perfuga, -ae, M., a deserter, runaway.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



plērusque, plēraque, plērumque, adj., most; generally plerique.
plumbum, -i, N., lead: **album plumbum**, tin (c. v, 12).
plūrés: see multus.
plūrimum, adv., superl. of multum; **longe plurimum valet**, is by far the most powerful (c. v, 8).
plūrimus, -a, -um, adj. superl. of multus.
plūs, adj., comp. of multus.
pōculum, -i, N., drinking cup.
poena, -ae, F., compensation, punishment, penalty; **poenas dare**, to pay the penalty, to be punished; **poenas sumere**, to exact a penalty, to punish.
poēta, -ae, M., poet.
pollicor, -ēri, -itus sum, v. tr. dep., promise.
Politēs, -ae, N. m., *Polites*, a son of Priam, slain by Pyrrhus before his father's eyes during the sacking of Troy.
Pompēius, -i, M., *Pompey*, **Qnēius Pompēius Magnus**, a Roman general, born 106 B.C., Consul 70 B.C., 55 and 52, defeated by Caesar at Pharsalia, 48 B.C., and afterwards assassinated in Egypt.
pōmum, -i, N., an apple.
pondus, -eris, N., weight.
pōne, adv., behind.
pōnō, pōnere, posui, positum, v. tr., place, put, lay down; **ponere arma**, to lay down arms (c. iv., 87); **castra ponere**, to pitch a camp: put aside.
pontus, -i, M., sea.
populatiō, -ōnis, F., devastation, ravaging.
populus, -i, M., people; **populi**, nations.
porta, -ae, F., gate, door.
porticus, -ūs, F., arcade, colonnade.
portus, -ūs, M., port, harbor.
poscō, poscere, poposci, no sup., v. tr., beg, demand, ask.
possidēō, -ēre, possēdi, possesum, v. tr., hold, own.
possidō, -ere, possēdi, possessum, v. tr., win, get possession of.
possum, posse, potui, no sup.; v. irreg., be able, can; **multum posse**, to have great power; **plurimum posse**, to have very great power.
post, adv. after, later; (often with the abl. of measure) **anno post**, a year

afterwards; **paucis diebus post**, a few days afterwards.

post, prep. (with acc.), after; **post tergum**, in the rear; **post paucos annos**, after a few years; **post hominum memoriam**, within the memory of man.

postea, adv., afterwards.

posteaquam, conj., after that, after.

posterus, -a, -um, adj., the following, next; (comp., posterior; sup., **postrēmus**); pl., **posterī, -orum**, descendants.

postis, -is, M., post.

postpōnō, -ere, posui, positum, v. tr., put off: (c. v, 7).

postquam, adv., after that, after, when.

postridiē, adv., the next day; **postridie ejus diei mane**, early next day (c. v, 10).

postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., ask, demand, request.

potens, -tis, adj., powerful.

potestās, -ātis, F., power.

potissimum, adv., sup., chiefly, principally, especially.

potius, adv., rather, preferably; sup. **potissimum**, no positive.

praeacūtus, -a, -um, adj., sharpened at the end, pointed.

praebēō, -ēre, -ui, -itum, v. tr., offer, show, furnish.

praecipēs, -cipitis, adj., headlong, teed, precipitous; **praecipites hostes agere**, to drive the enemy headlong (c. v, 17).

praeceptum, -i, N., teaching, advice, order, command.

praecipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, v. intr. (with dative), order, direct.

praecipitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. and intr., rush headlong, throw headlong; **mentem praecipitare**, to hasten one's resolve.

praecipuē, adv., especially, particularly.

praeciārus, -a, -um, adj., distinguished.

praecūdō, -ere, -cūsi, -cūsum, v. tr., close up (c. v, 9).

praecordia, -ōrum, N. pl., heart, breast.

praeda, -ae, F., booty, plunder.

praedicō, -āre, -dicāvī, -dicātum, v. tr., proclaim, boast.

praedicō, -ere, -dixī, -dictum, v. tr., foretell.

praeditus, -a, -um, adj. (with abl.), endowed with.

praedor, -ari, -atus sum, v. tr., plunder, pillage, obtain booty.

praeficiō, -ficere, -feci, -fectur, v. tr., put over, put in command of.

praefigō, -ere, fixi, -fixum, v. tr., fix or place in front of.

praefixus, perf. part. pass. of praefigō.

praemetuō, -ere, -ui, no sup., v. intr., fear for, be anxious for.

praen. + +, -ere, -misi, -missum, v. tr., send forward, send forward.

praemium, -i, N., reward.

praeparō, -are, -avi, -atum, v. tr., prepare.

praepōnō, -ere, -posui, -positum, v. tr., set over, place in command of.

praesens, -tis, adj., at hand, present.

praesertim, adv., especially.

praesidium, -i, N., guard, defence, garrison; **praesidio navibus esse**, to guard the ships (c. v, 9).

praestō, -stare, -stiti, -stitum, stand before, show, perform; officium praestare, to fulfil a duty (c. iv, 26).

praesum, -esse, -fui, v. intr. (with dative), be over, have command of; **negotio praeesse, to have charge of the matter (c. v, 2).**

praeter, prep. (with acc.), beyond, except, contrary to.

praeterea, adv., besides.

praetermittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, v. tr., let pass, let slip.

praetervehor, -vehi, -vectus sum, v. tr., be carried beyond, sail past, coast along.

precī, precem, prece (no nom. or gen. sing.); pl. **preces, precum, etc.**; F., prayer, request.

premo, -ere, pressi, pressum, v. tr., press, harass, crush.

prehendō (or prendō), -ere, -di, -sum, v. tr., seize, lay hold of.

prensō, -are, -avi, -atum, v. tr., grasp.

(**prex, precis**), F., supposed form; see **precī**.

pridie, adv., the day before.

primo, adv., at first.

primum, adv., firstly, in the first place; **ubi primum, as soon as; cum primum, as soon as possible; cum (quum) primum, as soon as.**

Priamēus, -a, -um, adj., of or belonging to Priam.

Priamus, i, M., Priam, the last king of Troy.

primus, -a, -um, adj., sup. of the comp., prior; no positive; **prima luce, at daybreak; prima nocte, at night;** **primum agmen, the vanguard; in primis, especially.**

princeps, -cipis, M., chief man, chief, prince.

principatus, -ūs, chief authority, leadership.

principium, -i, N., beginning.

prior, prius, adj., comp. (no positive; sup. **primus**); former, previous.

pristinus, -a, -um, adj., old, former.

prius, adv., before, sooner, earlier; followed by **quam**, and often written with it as one word, **priusquam** before, before that.

priusquam, conj., before.

privatim, adv., privately, individually.

privatus, -a, -um, adj., private.

pro, prep. (with abl.), in front of, before; for, in proportion to; **pro merito eius, as he deserved (c. v, 4); pro tempore et pro re, suited to the time and the conditions (c. v, 8); pro sano, as a sane man (c. v, 7); pro nummo, as money (c. v, 12); pro sua virtute, in consideration of his excellence.**

prōcēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, v. intr., advance, succeed.

procul, adv., afar, at a distance.

prōcumbō, -ere, -cubi, -cubitum, v. intr., fall, sink down.

prōditio, -ōnis, F., treachery, betraying.

prōditor, -ōris, M., traitor, betrayer.

prōdō, -ere, -didi, -ditum, v. tr., betray, surrender; **memoria proditum, handed down by tradition (c. v, 12).**

prōducō, -ere, -duxi, -ductum, v. tr., prolong.

proellor, -ari, -atus sum, v. intr., fight.

proellum, -i, N., battle; **proellum facere, to fight a battle.**

profectio, -ōnis, F., a departure, setting out.

profectō, adv., for a fact, indeed.

proficiscor, -ci, -factus sum, v. intr. dep., set out, depart.

prōgredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, v. tr. dep., advance, go forward.

- prohibeō**, -hibēre, -hibuī, hībī-
tum, v. tr., hold, defend, protect (c. v,
21).
- proiciō**, -iicere, -iici, iectum,
v. tr., throw, throw forward.
- proinde**, adv., henceforth, therefore.
- prolabor**, -i, -lapsus sum, v. dep.,
glide forward, sink down.
- promissum**, -i, N., promise.
- promissus**, -a, -um, adj., long,
flowing; capillo sunt promisso,
they have long hair (c. v, 14).
- promitto**, -ere, -misi, -missum,
v. tr., promise.
- promō**, -ere, prompsi, promp-
tum, v. tr., put forth; se promunt,
issue from
- promoveō**, -ere, -mōvi, -mōtum,
v. tr., move forward.
- pronē**, adv., headlong, leaning for-
ward.
- pronuntiō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.,
tell, announce, declare.
- pronus**, -a, -um, adj., steep.
- prope**, adv., near, nearly, almost;
comp., propius; sup., proximē.
- propellō**, -ere, -puli, -pulum,
v. tr., drive away, put to flight.
- properō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.
and intr., hurry, hasten.
- propinquō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v.
intr. (with dat.), approach.
- propinquus**, -a, -um, adj., near,
with dative; as a noun, propinquus,
-i, M., relation.
- propior**, -us, adj., comparative of
obsolete propis; sup. proximus;
nocte proxima, last night.
- propius**: see prope and propior.
- proprius**, -a, -um, adj., one's own,
particular, peculiar.
- propter**, prep. (with acc.), on account
of, in consequence of.
- propterea**, adv., for this reason,
therefore; propterea quod, because.
- propugnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v.
tr., fight.
- prosequor**, -sequi, -secutus
sum, v. tr., dep., follow after, follow,
attend.
- prospiciō**, -ere, -spexi, -speco-
tum, v. tr., look forward, take care.
- prosum**, -prod-esse, pro-fui, v.
intr., be of benefit to, benefit (with
dative).
- protegō**, -ere, -texi, -tectum, v.
tr., protect.
- protinus**, adv., at once, forthwith,
immediately; ex hac fuga protinus,
immediately after this defeat (c. v, 17).
- protrahō**, -ere, -traxi, -tractum,
v. tr., drag forth.
- provehō**, -ere, -vexi, -vectum,
v. tr., carry forward; in pass., sail along,
coast.
- provideō**, -ere, -vidi, -visum, v.
tr., foresee, take care.
- providus**, -a, -um, adj., foreseeing.
- proximē**: see prope.
- proximus**: see propior.
- pūbes**, -ia, F., youth.
- publicus**, -a, -um, adj., public,
common; res publica, the common-
wealth; publico consilio, by a public
plan.
- Publius**, -i, M., *Publius*, a Roman
praenomen.
- puella**, -ae, F., girl.
- puer**, pueri, M., boy, youth.
- pugna**, -ae, F., fight, combat.
- pugnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr.,
fight; acriter pugnatum est, a fierce
battle was fought (c. iv, 26).
- pulcher**, -chra, -chrum, adj.,
beautiful.
- pulvis**, -eris, M., dust.
- puppis**, -is, F., stern of a vessel; a
ship.
- pūrus**, -a, -um, adj., pure, bright.
- putō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.,
think, fancy, consider.
- Pyrrhus**, -i, M., *Pyrrhus*, also called
Neoptolemus, son of Achilles.

Q

Q = Quintus (which see).

qua, nom. sing. fem. or neut. pl. nom.
or acc. of quis or qui.

quā (abl. fem. of qui, supply viā or
parte) adv., where.

quadrāgintā, nom. card. adj., forty.

quaerō, ere, quaesivi, quaesi-
tum, v. tr., seek, look for, ask, enquire.

quaestiō, -ōnis, F., enquiry, inves-
tigation.

quaestor, -ōris, M., quaestor; the
quaestors were officers who acted as
government treasurers, received tribute
and paid the soldiers.

quālis, -e, adj., of what sort or kind;
talis...qualis, such...as; talis omit-
ted; qualis erat! what a sight was
he!



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of
human knowledge in
797,885 volumes

Instant access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

B

rabies, no gen. or dat., **rabiem**, **rabio**, F., rage.

radō, -ere, **rasī**, **rasum**, v. tr., shave.

rapidus, -a, -um, adj., swift, quick.

rapio, **rapere**, **rapui**, **raptum**, v. tr., snatch, seize, hurry off.

raptō, -āre, **āvī**, **ātum**, v. tr., drag.

raptor, -ōris, M., plunderer, **lupi raptōres**, prowling wolves

rarus, -a, -um, adj., few, scattered, in small parties.

ratio, -ōnis, F., reckoning, calculation, account; **rationem inire**, to form a plan; **ratio atque usus belli**, the theory and practice of war = the systematic practice of war; **equestris proelii ratio**, the style of the cavalry battle (c. v, 16); **ratio pontis**, the plan of the bridge; **rei militaris ratio**, military science (c. iv, 23); **omnibus rationibus**, in every way (c. v, 1); **reason, nec sat rationis in armis**: nor was there sufficient reason in (taking) arms

raucus, -a, -um, adj., hoarse.

rebellio, -ōnis, F., renewal of war, uprising; **rebellione facta**, by a renewal of the war (c. iv, 30, 38).

recedō, -ere, **cessi**, **cessum**, v. intr., go back, withdraw.

recens, -tis, adj., fresh, late, recent.

receptus, -us, M., retreat; **expeditus receptus**, a convenient retreat (c. iv, 33).

recipio, -cipere, **cēpi**, **ceptum**, v. tr., take back, recover, win; **in fidem recipere**, to take under one's protection or to receive as a pledge of faith (c. iv, 22); **se recipere**, to retreat (c. iv, 2); **se a fuga recipere**, to recover from the flight (c. iv, 27); **in deditionem recipere**, to admit to a surrender.

recondō, -ere, **didi**, **ditum**, v. tr., hide (far back).

recuso, -āre, **āvī**, **ātum**, v. tr., refuse, decline, deny; often followed by **quin** or **quominus**.

recutio, -ere, **cussi**, **cussum**, v. tr., strike.

reddō, -ere, **didi**, **ditum**, v. tr., give back, restore.

redeō, -ire, **-li** (IVI), **-itum**, v. intr., go back, return.

reditus, -us, M., return.

redūcō, -ere, **duxi**, **ductum**, v. tr., lead back.

referō, -ferre, **-tuli**, **-lātum**, v. tr., bring, carry back; **gratias referre**, to return thanks; **gratiam referre**, to requite, to repay; **ad suos referre**, to report to their people; **pedem referre**, to retreat (c. iv, 25).

reficio, **ficere**, **-feci**, **-fectum**, v. tr., repair, rest.

reflectō, -ere, **-flexi**, **-flexum**, v. tr., bend back.

refugio, **-fugere**, **-fūgi**, **-fugitum**, v. tr. and intr., flee back or away, retreat, escape; **shrink back**

refulgeō, -ēre, **-fulsi**, no sup., v. intr., shine out.

rēgina, -ae, F., queen.

regiō, -ōnis, F., district, country.

rēgius, -a, -um, adj., kingly, royal.

regnator, -ōris, M., ruler.

regnum, -i, N., kingdom (c. v, 20); **regnum civitatis**, sovereignty of the state (c. v, 6).

rejicio, **-jicere**, **-jeci**, **-jectum**, v. tr., hurl back, drive back, repulse; **tempestate rejici**, to be driven back by the storm (c. v, 5).

rēligiō, -ōnis, F., religion; **religionibus impediri**, to be hampered by religious scruples (c. v, 6); **quae religio?** what object of religious awe?

rēligiōsus, -a, -um, adj., holy, venerable.

relinquō, -ere, **-liqui**, **-lictum**, v. tr., leave, abandon, leave behind; **relinquebatur ut**, the only course left was that (c. v, 19).

reliquus, -a, -um, adj., remaining; **nihil reliqui est**, there is nothing left; **in reliquum tempus**, for all time to come; **reliquus exercitus**, the remainder of the army (c. iv, 22).

reluceō, -ēre, **-luxi**, no sup., v. intr., flash, gleam.

remaneō, -ēre, **-mansi**, **mansum**, v. intr., remain, await.

remeō, -āre, **āvī**, **ātum**, v. intr., return.

remitior, -iri, **-mensus sum**, v. dep., retrace.

rēmex, -igis, M., a rower.

rēmigō, -āre, **āvī**, **ātum**, v. intr., row.

remigrō, -āre, no part., no sup., v. intr., depart, return.

remissus, -a, -um, adj., relaxed; **remissioribus frigoribus**, since the cold is less intense (c. v, 12).

remittō, -ere, -misi, -missum, v. tr., send back.

removēō, -ere, -mōvi, -mōtum, v. tr., remove, dismiss, get rid of.

rēmus, -i, M., oar.

Rēmi, -ōrum, pl. M., the *Rēmi*, a powerful people of Gaul, whose capital was Durocorārum (now *Rheims*)

renovō, -ere, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., renew.

renuntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., bring back word, report.

reor, rēri, ratus sum, v. dep., think.

repellō, -ere, -puli, -pulsam, v. tr., drive back, repulse.

rependō, -ere, -di, -sum, v. tr., pay back.

repente, adv., suddenly.

repentinō, adv., suddenly, unexpectedly.

repentinus, -a, -um, adj., sudden, unexpected, hasty.

reperiō, -ire, repperi, repertum, v. tr., discover, find, ascertain.

repetō, -ere, -ivi or ii, -itum, v. tr., reseek, seek anew.

repleō, -ere, -plēvi, -plētum, v. tr., fill.

reportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., carry back.

reposcō, -ere, no perf., no sup., v. tr., claim in return, exact.

reprimō, -ere, -pressi, -pressum, v. tr., check.

requiescō, -ere, -quievī, -quies-tum, v. intr., rest.

requirō, -ere, -quisivi, -quisitum, v. tr., seek to know, ask.

rēs, rei, F., matter, affair, (the meaning will depend on the context); **res militaris,** military science; **res novae,** a change in government, a revolution; **res publica,** the state, commonwealth, politics; **res divina,** a sacred rite; **res frumentaria,** supply of corn; **his rebus,** on these terms (C. iv, 28).

resideō, -ere, -sēdi, no sup., v. intr., sit down, stay behind.

resistō, -ere, -stiti, no sup., v. intr., resist, oppose, withstand (with dative).

resolvō, -ere, -vi, solūtum, v. tr., unloose.

respiciō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum, v. tr., look back for or at.

respondēō, -ere, -spondi, -spon-sum, v. tr., reply, answer.

responsum, -i, N., answer, reply.

respublica, respublicae, (for de-clension), state, commonwealth.

restat, restāre, no perf., no sup., impera., it remains.

restinguō, -ere, -nxi, -nctum, v. tr., put out.

restō, -āre, -stiti, no sup., v. intr., remain, am left.

retineō, -ere, -tinui, -tentum, v. tr., restrain, detain, keep back.

retrahō, -ere, -traxi, -tractum, v. tr., draw back, save, preserve.

revertō, -ere, -verti, -versum, v. tr., turn back, return.

revertor, reverti, reverti, re-versum, v. intr., return.

revinclo, -ire, -vinxi, -vinctum, v. tr., bind back.

revisō, -ere, -visi, visum, v. tr., revisit.

revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., call back, recall.

revolvō, -ere, -volvi, -volūtum, v. tr., roll back.

rex, régis, M., king.

Rhēnus, -i, M., the Rhine.

Rhipeus, -i, M., Rhipeus, a comrade of Aeneas.

ripa, -ae, F., a bank.

rivus, -i, M., brook.

rōbur, -oris, N., oak.

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., ask.

Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj., Roman.

Rōmāni, -ōrum, M., pl., Romans.

roseus, -a, -um, adj., rosy.

rota, -ae, F., wheel.

Rūfus, -i, M., Publius Sulpicius Rufus, one of Caesar's lieutenants (C. iv, 22).

ruina, -ae, F., downfall.

rumpō, -ere, rūpi, ruptum, v. tr., break.

ruō, ruere, rui, rutum, v. intr., rush, fall.

rūpes, -is, F., rock, cliff.

rursum, adv., back again, anew.

rurus: see rursum.

S

Sabinus, -i, M., Sabinus; Quintus Titurius Sabinus, one of Caesar's lieutenants in Gaul. He was slain by the treachery of Ambiorix, 54 B.C.

sacer, -ora, -orum, adj., holy, sacred; as a noun, **sacra, -ōrum,** sacred rites

sacerdōs, -ōtis, M. or F., priest or priestess.

sacrāmentum, -i, N., the military oath taken by a Roman soldier. The chief obligations were obedience to the commander, loyalty to the country, etc.

sācrātus, -a, -um, perf. part. pass., used as an adj., hallowed.

sācrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., make holy, hallow.

saepe, adv., often; **minimē saepe,** very seldom; **comp., saepius;** **sup., saepissimē.**

saevio, -ire, -ivi, -itum, v. intr., be cruel, rage, be furious.

saevus, -a, -um, adj., cruel, fierce.

sagitta, -ae, F., arrow.

salsus, -a, -um, adj., salt.

saltus, -ūs, M., leap (*sallo*).

sālum, -i, N., surf (of the sea).

salūs, -ūtis, F., safety, health.

sanctus, -i, -um, adj., sacred, solemn.

sanguineus, -a, -um, adj., bloody.

sanguis, -inis, M., blood.

saniēs, ēī, F., gore.

sānus, -a, -um, adj., sound, healthy; **pro sano facere,** to act as a sane man (c. v, 7).

sarmentum, -i, N., twig.

sat = satis

sata, -ōrum, N. pl., perf. part. pass. of *sero*; crop.

satelles, -itis, M. or F., attendant, guard.

satiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, satisfy.

satis, adv., enough; used as an indecl. neut. noun.; **satis militum,** enough of soldiers (c. v, 2); or as adv. limiting an adj.; **satis magnus,** very large (c. v, 21).

satisfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, v. intr. with dative, satisfy; in *pass.,* **satisficō.**

saucius, -a, -um, adj., wounded.

saxum, -i, N., a rock, stone.

Scaeus, -a, -um, adj., *Scaean*; used in the phrase *Scaea portae*, the famous *Scaean* or *Western Gates* of Troy.

scala, -ae, F., ladder.

scandō, ere, scandī, scansum, v. tr., climb, mount

scapha, -ae, F., boat, skiff.

scelerātus, -a, -um, adj., wicked.

scelus, -eria, N., wickedness, sin.

scilicet, adv., doubtless, forsooth (*scire licet*).

scindō, ere, scidī, scissum, v. tr., cut, tear, destroy.

sciō, scire, scivi, scitum, v. tr., know.

scitor, -āri, -ātus sum, v. dep., seek to know, ask.

scribo, ere, scripsi, scriptum, v. tr., write.

Scyrius, -a, -um, adj., of or belonging to *Scyros*, an island east of *Euboea*.

scūtum, -i, N., a shield (of oblong shape, while the *clipeus* was round).

se: see sui,

secernō, -ere, -crēvi, -crētum, v. tr., separate.

secō, -āre, -ui, -tum, v. tr., cut.

secrētus, -a, -um, adj., separate, secret, private.

secum, with him, with themselves.

secundus, -a, -um, adj., following, second, favorable.

secūris, -is, F., axe (*acc. securim*).

secius, adj. (comp. of *secus*); **nihilō secius,** less by nothing, nevertheless; **haud secus ac =** just as.

secus, adv., otherwise, differently.

sed, conj., but, yet; **sed enim,** but indeed.

sediō, -ēre, -ēdi, -essum, v. intr., sit.

sedēs, -is, F., seat, abode.

seges, -etis, F., crop, harvest.

segnitiēs, -ēī, F., slowness.

Segontiaci, -ōrum, M., pl., the *Segontiaci*, a British tribe belonging to Hampshire.

Segovax, -ācis, M., *Segovax*, one of the petty princes of Kent (c. v, 22).

semita, -ae, F., a path.

semper, adv., always.

senātus, -ūs, M., *senate*.

senectūs, -ūtis, F., old age.

senex, senis, M., an old man.

senior, -ōris (comp. of *senex*, older).

sententia, -ae, F., opinion, decision.

sentiō, sentire, sensi, sensum, v. tr., think, know, observe.

sentis, -is, M., thorn, briar.

sepeliō, -ire, -ivi, sepultum, bury.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



solidus, -a, -um, adj., solid, whole.
sollemnis, -e, adj., annual; **arae sollemnes**, customary altars.
sollicitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., stir up, incite.
solum, -ī, N., ground.
solum, adv., alone, only, merely.
solus, -a, -um, adj., alone, only, single.
solvō, -ere, solvi, solūtum, v. tr., loose, unhind; **solvere navem**, or **naves**, to set sail; **naves solverunt**, so. funes, the ships set sail (c. iv, 28); **solvit se Teucoria luctu**, the Trojan land releases itself from sorrow.
somnus, -ī, M., sleep; in **somnis** = in **somniis**, in my dreams.
sonitus, -ūs, M., a sound.
sonō, -āre, -uī, -itum, v. intr., sound.
soror, -ōris, F., a sister.
sors, **sortis**, F., lot, fate.
sopor, -ōris, M., sleep.
sortior, -īri, sortitus sum, v. dep., draw lots, draw by lot.
spargō, -ere, -si -sum, v. tr., scatter.
Sparta, -ae; N. f.: the chief city of Laconia in the Peloponnesus, and home of Menelaus and Helen; *Sparta*, sometimes called *Lacedaemon*.
spatium, -ī, N., space, time.
speciēs, -eī, F. (gen. and dat. pl. not found), appearance, form; sight.
spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., look, observe; **ad orientem solem spectat**, it faces the East (c. v, 18).
speculātor, -ōris, M., scout, spy.
speculātorius, -a, -um, adj., scouting, spying; **navigia speculātoris**, despatch boats, rowed with a single bank of oars, generally ten in number on each side, and employed for reconnoitring purposes.
speculor, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr., watch.
spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. and intr., hope, expect.
spēs, -speī (gen. and dat. pl., rare), F., hope; in **spem venire**, to have hopes, to entertain hopes.
spira, -ae, F., coil.
spissus, -a, -um, adj., thick.
spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., rob, plunder.

spolium, -ī, N., spoil, booty.
sponsa, -ae, F., betrothed.
spūmeus, -a, -um, adj., forming foam.
spūmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., foam.
squālen, -ntis, adj., rough.
squāleō, -ēre, -uī, no sup., v. intr., be rough.
squāmeus, -a, -um, adj., scaly.
stabilitās, -ātis, F., firmness, steadiness (c. iv, 33).
stabulum, -ī, N., stall, stable.
statim, adv., instantly, at once, immediately.
statiō, -ōnis, F., outpost, picket, guard; in **statione esse**, to be on guard (c. iv, 32) = in **stationibus esse** (c. v, 15); in **stationem succedere**, to take their place on guard (c. iv, 32); anchorage.
statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, v. tr., decide, resolve (c. v, 7, 11); build.
statūra, -ae, F., height, size.
stella, -ae, F., star.
sternō, -ere, strāvī, strātum, v. tr., lay low.
Sthenelus, -ī, M., *Sthenelus*, a leader of the Greeks.
stipendium, -ī, N., pay, tax, tribute.
stō, **stāre**, steti, stātum, v. intr., stand, stand firm; **Palladis auxiliis semper stetit**, ever rested on the aid of Pallas.
strepitus, -ūs, M., noise, din.
strictus, -a, -um, perf. part. pass. from **stringo**, drawn.
stridō, -ere, stridi, no sup., creak.
stringō, -ere, strinxī, strictum, v. tr., draw, unsheath.
struō, **struere**, struxī, structum, v. tr., build.
studeō, -ēre, -uī, no sup., v. intr. (with dat.), be eager about, aim at; **novis rebus studere**, to aim at a change in the government.
studiōsē, adv., eagerly, zealously.
studium, -ī, N., zeal, devotion; **summo studio**, with the greatest zeal, (c. v, 8).
stultē, adv., foolishly.
stultitia, -ae, F., foolishness.
stultus, -a, -um, adj., foolish.
stupeō, -ēre, stupuī, no sup., be amazed.
stuppeus, -a, -um, adj., hempen.

suādeo, suādere, suāsi, suāsum, v. intr., recommend, advise (with dat.

sub, prep. (with acc. and abl.), beneath, under, near, just before, at the foot of; **sub sinistra,** on the left (c. v, 8); **sub bruma,** at the time of the winter solstice (c. v, 13).

subducō, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum, v. tr., draw up on shore; **navem subducere,** to beach a ship (c. v, 11).

subductiō, -ōnis, F., drawing up on shore, beaching a vessel.

subeō, -ire, -ii (ivi), -itum, v. tr., come up, approach; **auxilio subeuntem,** coming up to aid; **illa subit, it** approaches; **est alii subeunt,** but others come up.

subjiō, -ficere, -jēci, -jectum, v. tr., place near, expose; **hiemi navigationem subjiere,** to expose his voyage to the winter, i. e., to run the risk of sailing in winter (c. iv, 86).

subjectus, -a, -um (perf. part. pass. of **subjiō**), **adj.,** adjacent, near; **insulae subjectae,** islands lying near (c. v, 13); **subjectis flammis,** with flames placed beneath

subitō, adv., suddenly, quickly.

subitus, -a, -um, adj., sudden, unexpected.

sublābor, -lābi, lapsus sum, v. dep., slip down, sink.

sub-ministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., supply (c. iv, 50).

submittō, -ere, -misi, -missum, v. tr., send secretly.

submoveō, -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, tr. v., dislodge, draw off.

suboles, -is, F., posterity, race.

subsequor, -sequi, -secutus sum, v. tr., dep., follow closely, follow.

subsidiū, -i, N., auxiliary troops reserve, aid; **ad omnes casus subsidia componere,** to make provision for all emergencies (c. iv, 81).

substatō, -ere, -stiti, no sup., v. intr., halt, make a stand; **neque ancorae funesque substant,** neither the anchors nor the cables hold out (c. v, 10); **substitit, it** halted.

subsum, -esse, -fui, v. intr., be near; **aequinoctium subest,** the equinox is at hand (c. v, 23).

succēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, v. intr., approach, take the place of; **ad stationem succedere,** to take their place on guard (c. iv, 82).

successus, -us, M., success.

succidō, -ere, -cidi, -cisum, v. tr., cut down.

suocisus, -a, -um, perf. part. pass. of succido, cut down.

succurrō, -ere, -curri, -cursum, v. intr. (with dat.), help, aid; **succurritis urbi incensae,** you are aiding a city in flames; **succurrit menti = occurrit menti,** the thought comes to my mind.

sūdes, -is, F., stake; **scutis sudibus praefixis,** with sharp stakes fixed in front (of the bank) (c. v, 19).

sūdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., sweat.

sūdor, -ōris, M., sweat.

suffectus, -a, -um, perf. part. pass. of sufficiō, suffused

sufferō, -ferre, sustuli, sustulitum, v. tr., bear, endure.

sufficiō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectum, v. tr., to tinge.

sui, reflex. pro., of himself, herself, itself.

sulcus, -i, M., furrow.

sulfur, -uris, N., brimstone, sulphur.

Sulpicius, -i, M., Sulpicius: a Roman nomen (see Cognomen); **Publius Sulpicius Rufus,** a lieutenant of Caesar in Gaul (c. iv, 22).

sum, esse, fui, v. intr., be.

summa, -ae, F., total, whole; general administration, control; **summa imperii bellicae administrandi permissa,** the supreme command in conducting the war being entrusted (c. v, 11).

summoveō: see submoveō.

summus, -a, -um, adj., highest, greatest, very great, chief (superl. of **superus**); **summus mons,** the top of the mountain; **summa res,** a most important matter; **summis copiis,** with their entire forces (c. v, 17); **summa ab arce,** from the top of the citadel; **summa dies,** the last day; **summa = suprema.**

sūmō, sūmere, sumpsī, sumpsum, v. tr., take, assume; **poenas sumere,** to exact a penalty.

super, prep. (with acc. and abl.) above; **et super,** and further; **super his (dictis),** moreover, with these (words).

superbus, -ā, -um, adj., proud, haughty.

superior, -us, (comp. of superus), higher, previous; **nocte superiore,**

on the previous night (c. v, 10); **superiore aestate**, in the preceding summer (c. iv, 21; v, 8); **superius tempus**, former time (c. iv, 22; v, 11); **superiore anno**, in the previous year (c. iv, 28); in **locis superioribus**, up the country, c. v, 8; **locus superior**, a height (c. v, 9).

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., conquer, defeat; **superare undas**, rise above the waves; mount.

supersum, -esse, -fui, v. intr., remain, survive; **neque multum aestatis superest**, and not much of the summer is left (c. v, 22).

superus, -a, -um, adj., high (comp., superior; sup., **supremus**, or **summus**); **superi, -orum**, those above, the gods.

supplex, -icis, adj., suppliant.

supplicatio, -ōnis, F., thanksgiving.

supra, prep. (with acc.) and adv., above, over.

surgō, -ere, surrexi, surrectum, v. intr., rise.

suscitō, -āre, -āvī, -āvī, v. tr., stir up.

suspectus, -a, -um, perf. part. pass. of **suspicio**, suspected.

suspensus, -a, -um, adj., in doubt.

suspicio, -ōnis, F., suspicion; in **suspicionem venire**, to be suspected; **neque ulla belli suspicione interposita**, and no suspicion of war having arisen (c. iv, 32).

suspicio, -ere, suspexi, suspectum, v. tr., suspect.

suspitor, -āri, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep., suspect, distrust.

sustineō, -ēre, -tinui, -tentum, v. tr., withstand (c. iv, 37); check, rein in (c. iv, 33); hold one's ground (c. iv, 32).

suus, -a, -um, reflexive, adj. pro., his, her, its, their.

T

T. = Titus, a Roman praenomen: see cognomen.

tabulatum, -i, N., storey, floor.

taceō, -ēre -ui, -itum, v. tr. and intr., be silent; pass over in silence.

tacitus, -a, -um, adj., silent.

tactus, -ūs, M., touching, touch.

tālea, -ae, F., bar; **tālea ferreae**, iron bars (c. v, 12).

tālis, -e, adj., such.

tam, adv., so (before adverbs and adjectives); **tam...quam...**, as much...as.

tandiu, adv., so long.

tamen, adv., yet, still, for all that, however, nevertheless.

Tamesis, -is (acc. Tamesim), M., the Thames.

tandem, adv., at length, finally; in questions, pray? now? as quis tandem? who, pray?

tangō, tangere, tetigi, tactum, v. tr., touch, border on.

tantō, adv. of comparison, by so much; with comparatives, **tanto brevior**, so much the shorter.

tantulus, -a, -um, adj., so very small, so slight, so trifling; **has tantularum rerum occupationes**, this business consisting of such trifles (c. iv, 22).

tantum, adv., only, so much, so far, merely.

tantus, -a, -um, adj., so great, so large, such; **ta. to spatio**, so far (c. iv, 35).

tardō, adv., slowly.

tardus, -a, -um, adj., slow.

taurus, -i, M., bull.

Taximagulus, -i, M., Taximagulus, one of the petty kings of Kent (c. v, 22).

tectum, -i, N., house.

tectus, -a, -um, perf. part. pass. of **tego**, shut up; **tectus**, shutting himself up in his tent.

tegō, tegere, texi, tectum, v. tr., cover; **si qua tegunt**, if anything they conceal (Verg. 159); protect, **neō Apollinis infula texti**, nor did the fillet of *Apollo* protect thee.

tellūs, -ūris, F., land.

tēlum, -i, N., weapon, dart.

temerō, adv., at random, without a purpose (c. iv, 20).

tēmō, -ōnis, M., pole (of a chariot).

temperantia, -ae, F., self-control, moderation.

temperatus, -a, -um, adj., temperate, mild; **loca sunt temperatiora**, the climate is milder (c. iv, 12).

temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. and intr., with acc., rule, manage; with dat., restrain.

tempestās, -ātis, F., weather; **idonea ad navigandum tempestas**, weather suitable for sailing (c. iv, 23; c. iv, 36; v, 7; storm (c. iv, 28, 29, 34); **rejici tempestate**, to be driven back by a storm (c. v, 5).



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of
human knowledge in
797,885 volumes

Instant access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

trajectus, -ūs, M., passage, distance, across.

tranquillitas, -ātis, F., calm weather; **summa tranquillitas**, a dead calm (C. v, 23).

tranquillus, -a, -um, adj., calm.

trans, prep. (with acc.), across, over, on the other side, beyond.

transēō, -ire, II (IV), -itum, v. tr., cross over, cross.

transferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, v. tr., bear or carry across; **summam imperii transferre**, to transfer the supreme power.

transgredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, v. tr., pass over, cross.

transigō, -ere, -ēgi, -actum, v. tr., pass through; **tempus transigere**, to pass the time.

transitus, -ūs, M., a going or crossing over, passing, crossing.

trajectus, -ūs, M., passage, distance across (C. v, 2).

transmissus, -ūs, M., passage (C. v, 18).

transportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., carry over, transport.

Transrhēnāni, -ōrum, pl. M., those living across the Rhine (C. v, 2).

Trebōnius, -ī, M., *Trebonius*; Caius Trebonius, one of C. Caesar's lieutenants in Gaul.

trecenti, -ae, -a, card. num. adj., three hundred.

tremefactus, -a, -um, adj., dismayed.

tremens, -tis, adj., trembling.

tremendus, -a, -um, adj., terrible.

tremō, -ere, -uī, no sup., v. intr., tremble, quiver.

tremor, -ōris, M., trembling, fear.

trepidō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., tremble much; hasten.

trepidus, -a, -um, adj., alarmed.

trēs, **trīs**, card. num. adj., three.

Treviri, -ōrum, pl. M., *the Treviri*, a people of Gallica Belgica, who dwell between the Meuse and the Rhine; their capital was Augusta Trevirorum, now Trèves.

tribūnus, -ī, M., a commander of a tribe; hence, one of military officers, six in number, attached to each legion.

tribuō, -ere, -ī, tribūtum, v. tr., give, show.

tribūtum, I. N., tribute, tax.

tridens, -tis, M., trident.

triduum, -ī, N., space of three days; **tridui via**, a three days' march.

trigintā, card. num. adj., thirty.

Trinobantēs, -um, pl. M., *the Trinobantes*, a people of Britain who occupied Essex and part of Suffolk.

tripertitō, adv., in three divisions.

triplex, -plicis, adj., threefold, triple.

triquetrus, -a, -um, adj., three-cornered, triangular.

tris, num. adv., thrice.

tristis, -e, adj., sad, sorrowful, dejected.

trisuicus, -a, -um, adj., three-forked.

tristitia, -ae, F., sadness.

Tritōnia, -ae, F., *Tritonia* or *Minerva*.

Tritōnis, -idis, adj., *Tritonian*, an epithet of *Minerva*, who was also called *Tritonia*.

triumphus, -ī, M., triumph.

Trōēs, -um, pl., *The Trojans*.

Trōja, -ae, F., *Troy*.

Trōjānus, -a, -um, adj., *Trojan*.

tropaeum, -ī, N., trophy, i.e., a memorial or monument of victory; hence victory.

Trōs, **Trōis**, M., *Tros*, a king of Troy.

trucidō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., butcher, slaughter.

truncus, -ī, M., trunk, body without limbs.

tū, **tui**, pl. vos, thou, you.

tuba, -ae, F., trumpet (with a straight tube).

tueor, **tueri**, **tuitus sum**, v. dep., preserve, defend, protect.

tum, adv., then.

tumens, -tis, adj., swelling.

tumēō, -ere, -uī, no sup., swell.

tumidus, -a, -um, adj., swelling.

tumultus, -ūs, M., disturbance, disorder.

tumulus, -ī, M., mound.

tunc, adv., then, at that time.

turba, -ae, F., crowd, throng.

turbātus, -a, -um, adj., alarmed.

turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., disturb.

turbō, -inis, M., whirlwind.

turma, -ae, F., a troop of 30 cavalry; the cavalry (ala) of the legion was divided into 10 *turmae*.

turpis, -e, adj., base, disgraceful.

turris, -is, F., tower.

tūtē, adv., in safety, safely.

tutor, -āri, -ātus sum, v. dep., protect.

tūtus, -a, -um, adj., safe, secure.

tuus, -a, -um, pro. adj., thy, your.

Tydidēs, -ae, M., son of Tydeus, an epithet of Diomedes, one of the Greek warriors at the siege of Troy.

Tyndaris, -idis, F., daughter of Tyndarus, an epithet of Helen, wife of Menelaus: (see Helena).

U

ubi, adv., where, when; **ubi primum**, as soon as.

ubique, adv., everywhere.

Ucalegōn, -ontis, M., Ucalegon, a Trojan.

ulciscor, **ulcisci**, **ultus sum**, v. tr. dep., avenge, punish.

Ulixēs, -is or -i, M., Ulysses, king of Ithaca, noted among the Greeks for his cleverness in strategy. His wanderings on his return home after the fall of Troy form the subject of Homer's *Odyssey*, upon which much of the *Aeneid* is modelled. He is always referred to by Vergil as a type of Greek cunning.

ullus, -a, -um, adj., any.

ulterior, -ius, comp. adj., further, beyond, more remote; sup., **ultimus**.

ultimus, -a, -um, adj., farthest, most distant.

ultrō, -ōris, M., an avenger.

ultrā, adv., and prep. (with acc.), beyond, on the other side; **ultra fidem**, beyond belief.

ultrō, adv., of one's own accord; without provocation; **bellum ultrō inferre**, to make war without provocation (c. iv, 13); voluntarily.

ultus, -a, -um, perf. part. of **ulciscor**, having avenged.

ululō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., howl.

umbō, -ōnis, M., boss (of a shield).

umbra, -ae, F., shade.

umerus, -i, M., shoulder, arm.

umidus, -a, -um, adj., moist, dewy.

unā, adv., along with; usually with **cum**; **una cum his legatis**, along with these envoys (c. iv, 26); **una cum ceteris**, along with the others (c. v, 6).

unda, -ae, F., wave.

unde, adv., from which place, whence.

undique, adv., from all sides, on all sides, everywhere.

undō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., rise in waves, swell.

universus, -a, -um, adj., whole, all (in a body).

unquam, adv., ever, at any time; **non unquam** = **nunquam**.

ūnus, -a, -um, card. num. adj., one, alone; **uno tempore**, at one and the same time; **omnes ad unum**, all to a man; **hoc unum**, only this (c. iv, 28); **justissimus unus**, above all others the most just.

urbis, F., city.

urgeo, -ere, **ursi**, no sup., v. tr., press hard.

ūrō, -ere, **ussi**, **ustum**, v. tr., burn.

usquam, adv., anywhere.

usque, adv., right on, ever.

ūsus, -ūs, M., use, experience, practice, advantage; **ratio atque usus belli**, theory and practice of war, i.e., the systematic practice of war; **magno usui sibi esse**, to be of great advantage to him (c. iv, 20); **usus belli**, skill in war (c. iv, 20); **ex usu**, of advantage (c. v, 6); **pervius usus**, a connecting passage.

ut (or **uti**), conj., that, in order that (Final); that, so that (Consecutive); that (in Substantive clauses); that not (with verbs of fearing).

uter, **utra**, **utrum**, interrog. pro., which of two?

uterque, **utraque**, **utrumque**, adj. pro., each (of two), both; **ex utraque parte**, on both sides; **in utrumque paratus**, ready for either result.

uturus, -i, M., belly, womb.

utinam, adv., O that.

utor, **ūti**, **ūsus sum**, v. intr. dep. (with abl.), use, employ, enjoy; **alacritate uti**, to show dash (c. iv, 24).

utrimque, adv., from or on both sides.

utriusque, pl. of **uterque**.

utrum, conj., whether; **utrum... an**, whether... or; often not translated in direct questions.

uxor, -ōris, F., wife.

V

vacuus, -a, -um, adj., empty.
vādō, -ere, no pl., no sup., v. intr., go, advance.
vadum, -i, N., ford.
vagor, -āri, -ātus sum, v. intr., dep., wander; *ea fama vagatur*; that report spreads.
valens, -tis (proa part. of *valeo* used as an) adj., powerful.
valeō, -ēre, -ui, -itum, v. intr., be powerful, strong; have power or influence; *longe plurimum valet*, is by far the most powerful (c. v, 8); *quam plurimum valere*, to be as powerful as possible (c. v, 4); avail.
validus, -a, -um, adj., strong.
vallis, -is, F., valley.
vallum, -i, N., rampart, breastwork of a camp.
vānus, -a, -um, adj., empty, vain.
varius, -a, -um, adj., different, changing.
vastō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., lay waste, devastate.
vastus, -a, -um, adj., vast.
vātēs, -is, M. or F., a soothsayer, prophet.
 -ve, enclitic conjunction, or; giving a choice between two or more things.
vectigal, -ālis, N., tax, toll, revenue.
vectorius, -a, -um, adj., adapted for carrying; *navigium vectorium*, a transport ship.
vehiculum, -i, N., a carriage.
vehō, *vehere*, *vexi*, *vectum*, v. tr., bear, carry, convey.
vel, conj., or; *vel...vel*, either... or; with sup., even, indeed; *vel optimus*, the very best.
vellō, -ere, *velli*, *vulsum*, v. tr., pluck.
velō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., cover, veil.
velum, -i, N., sail; *dare vela ventis*, to set sail.
velut, adv., just as; *velut si*, just as if.
vendō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, v. tr., sell, offer for sale; *passa*, *VENEO* (which see).
venenum, -i, N., poison.
véneō, -ire, *ii* (*ivi*), -itum, v. pass. (see *vendo*), be sold.
veneror, -āri, -ātus sum, v. tr., adore, worship.

Veneticus, -a, -um, adj., of or belonging to the Veneti, a tribe on the west coast of France, north of the Loire, in the vicinity of the bay of Quiberon. Caesar subdued them 51 B.C.

venia, -ae, F., favor, forgiveness.

veniō, -venire, *veni*, *ventum*, v. intr., come; *est ventum (= venerunt)*, they came (c. iv, 28).

venter, -tris, M., belly; hunger (Verg. 356).

ventūra, -ōrum, neut. pl. fut. part. act., coming events.

ventus, i, M., wind; *dare vela ventis*, to set sail.

vēr, *vēris*, N., spring; *primo vere*, at the beginning of spring; *extremo vere*, at the end of spring.

verbum, -i, N., word; in pl., conversation.

verē, adv., truly, in truth (comp., *verius*; sup., *verissime*).

vereor, -ēri, -itus sum, v. tr., dep., fear, dread; *navibus veritus*, fearing for the safety of the ships (c. v, 9).

vergō, -ere, no perf., no sup., v. intr., incline, slope; *ad septentriones vergit*, it has a northerly slope (c. iv, 20).

verō, adv., in truth, in fact, truly, certainly; but, indeed.

versātus, perf. part. dep., *versor*, skilled in.

versō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., turn often, change.

versor, -āri, -ātus sum, v. intr., dwell in, be occupied with, engaged in.

vertex, -icis, M., top, head.

vertō, *vertere*, *verti*, *versum*, v. tr., turn, change; *terga vertere*, to turn their backs, flee (c. iv, 35).

vertor, *verti*, *verti*, *versum*, v. semi-dep., turn, change.

verum, adv., see *vero*.

verus, -a, -um, adj., true.

vescor, *vesci*, no perf. or sup., intr. dep. (with abl.), feed, live upon.

vesper, -eris (or -eri), M., evening; *vespere*, or *vesperi*, in the evening.

Vesta, -ae, F., *Vesta*, the Roman goddess of the hearth and home.

vester, -tra, -trum, adj. pro., your, yours.

vestibulum, -i, N., porch, entrance.

vestigium, -i, N., footprint, track.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies